

# **College Caesar**

Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and  
Commentary

Geoffrey Steadman

College Caesar  
Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

First Edition

© 2011 by Geoffrey D. Steadman

Revised April 2015

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publisher.

The author has made an online version of this work available under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 License. The terms of the license can be accessed at [creativecommons.org](http://creativecommons.org).

Accordingly, you are free to copy, alter, and distribute this work under the following conditions:

- (1) You must attribute the work to the author (but not in any way that suggests that the author endorses your alterations to the work).
- (2) You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
- (3) If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license as this one.

ISBN-13: 978-0-9843065-7-2

ISBN-10: 0-9843065-7-9

Published by Geoffrey Steadman

Cover Design: David Steadman

Fonts: Times New Roman

[geoffreysteadman@gmail.com](mailto:geoffreysteadman@gmail.com)

## Table of Contents

	Pages
35 Lessons by Title.....	v
Preface to the Series.....	vii-viii
Introduction.....	ix-x
Outline of the <i>Bellum Gallicum</i> .....	xi
Chronology of the Life of Julius Caesar.....	xii
How to Use this Commentary.....	xiii
Running Core Vocabulary.....	xiv-xix
Abbreviations.....	xxii

### Selections from Caesar's *Commentārii dē Bellō Gallicō*

Book I.1-7 (Lessons 1-5) .....	2-11
The Helvetian Campaign	
Book IV.24-35 (Lessons 6-12) .....	12-25
First Expedition to Britain	
Book VI.13-20 (Lessons 13-17) .....	26-35
Customs Among the Gauls	
Book V.24-48 (Lessons 18-35) .....	36-71
Gauls Attack the Romans in Winter-Quarters	
Nouns, Pronouns, and Adjectives.....	72-73
Verb Synopses.....	74-83
Alphabetized Core Vocabulary.....	84-90



## 35 Lessons by Title

### Book 1

- Lesson 1 The Divisions Within Gaul
- Lesson 2 Orgetorix Forms a Conspiracy to Emigrate from Helvetia
- Lesson 3 Orgetorix's Conspiracy Fails
- Lesson 4 The Helvetians Follow Orgetorix's Plan: Two Possible Routes
- Lesson 5 Caesar Decides to Stop the Helvetians

### Book 4

- Lesson 6 The Britons Approach the Romans as They Land
- Lesson 7 The Romans Land and Give Chase to the Britons
- Lesson 8 The Britons Seek Peace, and the Roman Cavalry is Delayed
- Lesson 9 The Fleet is Damaged in the Storm
- Lesson 10 The Britons Attack the Romans (I)
- Lesson 11 The Britons Attack the Romans (II)
- Lesson 12 The Britons are Defeated by the Romans

### Book 6

- Lesson 13 Two Classes of Nobility: Druids and Knights
- Lesson 14 The Druids: Privileges, Education, and Beliefs
- Lesson 15 The Knights and Human Sacrifice
- Lesson 16 Gods and Goddesses Among the Gauls
- Lesson 17 Marriages, Funerals, and Rumors

### Book 5

- Lesson 18 Roman Winter Quarters are Scattered Among the Gauls
- Lesson 19 Tasgetius is Killed and Ambiorix Revolts
- Lesson 20 Ambiorix Advises Sabinus to Leave Camp
- Lesson 21 Sabinus' Officers Advise Against Leaving the Camp
- Lesson 22 Sabinus Argues in Favor of Leaving the Camp
- Lesson 23 Cotta Argues Against Leaving the Camp, but the Romans Depart
- Lesson 24 The Romans are Ambushed, and Sabinus is Despondent
- Lesson 25 Cotta Takes Command as the Romans are Surrounded
- Lesson 26 Cotta is Wounded, and Sabinus Seeks out Ambiorix
- Lesson 27 Ambiorix Kills Sabinus and Incites the Nervii
- Lesson 28 The Nervii and other Gauls Attack Cicero's Camp
- Lesson 29 Cicero Resists as the Nervii Advise Departure
- Lesson 30 The Nervii Continue the Siege and Set Fire to Cicero's Camp
- Lesson 31 Cicero's Men Resist Amid the Flames
- Lesson 32 The Story of Vorenus and Pullo
- Lesson 33 Caesar is Informed and Acts Decisively
- Lesson 34 Caesar Sends Orders to Crassus and Labienus
- Lesson 35 Caesar Sends Word of his Arrival to Cicero



## Preface to the Series

The aim of this commentary is to make selections from Julius Caesar's *Gallic War* as accessible as possible to intermediate-level Latin readers so that they may experience the joy, insight, and lasting influence that comes from reading one of the greatest works in classical antiquity in the original Latin. To accomplish this goal, I have decided to eschew the traditional commentary format and adopt the best features of Clyde Pharr's *Aeneid*.

Beneath each of the 35 sections, hereafter called "lessons," of the Latin text are all the corresponding vocabulary words that occur four or fewer times in the commentary, arranged alphabetically in two columns. On the page facing the Latin text and vocabulary is a single page of grammar commentary, which is organized according to line numbers and likewise arranged into two columns. This format allows me to include as much information as possible and yet insure that the entries are distinct and immediately accessible to readers. To complement the vocabulary within the commentary, I have added a running core vocabulary list at the beginning of this commentary that includes all words occurring five or more times arranged according to the lesson in which readers first encounter them. An alphabetized form of this list can be found in the glossary. Together, this book has been designed in such a way that, once readers have mastered the running core list, they will be able to rely solely on the Latin text and facing notes and not need to turn a page or consult outside dictionaries.

The grammatical notes are designed to help beginning readers read the text, and so I have passed over detailed literary and historical explanations in favor of short, concise, and frequent entries that focus exclusively on grammar and morphology. Assuming that readers complete their initial study of Latin with varying levels of ability, I draw attention to almost all subjunctive and accusative-infinitive constructions, identify unusual verb forms and noun constructions, and in general explain aspects of the Latin that they should have encountered in their elementary review of Latin grammar but perhaps forgotten. As a rule, I prefer to offer too much assistance rather than too little.

For instructors, I have intentionally placed the readings in Book VI before those in Book V. This arrangement conveniently breaks the book into halves of 17 and 18 lessons so that those reading in college may complete one lesson per class and have a midterm after L. 17. For those reading in a high school block schedule (90 90-minute classes), the order allows teachers to complete one lesson per day and administer several tests by the end of the 4.5-

week (22-day) interim and to finish all 35 lessons by the 9-week (45 day) interim. Year-long Latin programs can devote two days to each lesson and finish well within a 90-day semester.

### **Print on Demand Books**

Finally, this volume is a self-published, print-on-demand (POD) book. The most evident limitation of this method of publishing is that the commentary has not undergone extensive peer-review or general editing. Because there are so many vocabulary and commentary entries, there are sure to be typographical and factual errors. While these mistakes continue to be identified and corrected, I hope the reader will excuse the occasional error. Another limitation of a POD book is the restricted channel of distribution. Since this book is printed immediately after it is purchased and cannot be returned, physical bookstores are reluctant to sell it. For the time being, this book is available only through online retail.

The benefits of POD, however, outweigh the costs. This commentary and others in the series simply would not exist without POD. Since there is no traditional publisher acting as a middle man, there is no one to deny publication of this work because it is a financial gamble and may not be profitable *for the publisher*. The decision to publish is mine alone. In addition, since this book is no more than a .pdf waiting to be printed, I am able to make corrections and place a revised edition of a POD book for sale as often as I want. In this regard, we should liken PODs to software instead of traditional typeset books. Although the first edition of a POD may not be as polished as a traditional book, authors are able to respond very quickly to readers' recommendations and criticisms and create an emended POD that is far superior to previous editions. Consider, therefore, what you hold in your hand as an inexpensive beta version of the commentary. If you would like to recommend changes or download a free .pdf copy of the book as well as digital flashcards and other ancillaries, please contact me at the URL or email addresses below.

Finally, I would like to thank Christopher Lauber at the Fordham Preparatory School and Jim Westcot at Blue Ridge High School for reading through the text and commentary and saving readers from innumerable errors, both great and small. I am very grateful for their sound judgment and keen observations.

Geoffrey Steadman Ph.D.  
geoffreysteadman@gmail.com  
<http://collegecaesar.wordpress.com>

## Introduction to Caesar's *Commentārii dē Bellō Gallicō*

Gaius Julius Caesar was a ruthless killer and consummate writer. He did not come to Gaul to rescue the people from themselves; he came to conquer, and his commentaries on the *Bellum Gallicum* were a vehicle to magnify his reputation among the Roman people. Nowhere are these two traits of Caesar better illustrated than in the passage below from Book I.12. In an effort to stop the 368,000 Helvetians from migrating to Western Gaul, Caesar pursues with three legions and intercepts one-fourth of the Helvetians (up to 92,000) as they are about to cross the Arar river and rejoin those who have already crossed. What ensues is a slaughter:

I.12 Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodānum  
 īfluit, incredibilī lenitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iudicārī nōn possit. Id 1  
 Helvetiī rātibus ac lintribus iunctīs transībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certiōr  
 factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvetiōs id flūmen tradūxisse, quārtam vērō  
partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē  
 castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nondum flūmen transierat. 5

Eōs impeditōs et inopinantēs aggressus, magnam partem eōrum concidit; reliquī  
 sēsē fugae mandāvērunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pagus appellābātur  
 Tigrurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hic pāgus ūnus,  
 cum domō exīssset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium consulem interfēcerat et  
 eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum immortalīum 10  
 quae pars civitātis Helvetiae īnsignem calamitātem populō Romanō intulerat, ea  
 prīnceps poenam persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum pūblicās, sed etiam prīvatās  
iniūriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigrurīnī  
 eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant. 15

The passage is rich in rhetorical devices which Caesar employs to dehumanize the enemy, downplay the loss of life, and yet magnify his image as a Roman general. First, Caesar does not depict the Helvetians as human beings worthy of sympathy. In lines 4-7 he refers to the enemy with the banal term “partem,” and in line 7, the only line which depicts the attack itself, he employs nondescript pronouns and adjectives such as “eōs,” “eōrum,” and “reliquī” which suggest that Caesar is attacking a faceless enemy rather than an entire community. In line 4, when he refers to the Helvetians as “copiarum,” his word choice is not simply vague but misleading. The word *cōpiae* can refer to “supplies” or “baggage” and rightly describe the long train of Helvetians travelling with their possessions, but throughout Caesar’s writings, the word denotes “troops;” and so, when Caesar uses this word to describe the Helvetians, he perhaps intentionally suggests that he is facing armed men rather than unarmed innocents.

Since in lines 8-9 Caesar refers to the group which he attacks as a *pagus*, one of the four political districts of Helvetia, we can conclude that Caesar in fact attacked men and women of all ages. Thus, when Caesar describes those whom he attacked as “those weighed down and unsuspecting” (*eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs*, l. 7), though the passage may lead us to believe that these are *cōpiae*, troops, hindered by their packs, they are more likely men and women of all ages weighed down not by weapons but by the young, by the sick, and by the elderly.

Besides word choice, another rhetorical strategy that Caesar employs involves the relative size and arrangement of passages in his narrative. Elsewhere, Caesar is very detailed in his descriptions of battles. Here, he devotes only two lines (7-8) to the attack itself, but six (1-6) to an introduction and another nine (8-16) to his justification. In doing so, Caesar not only minimizes the importance of an attack on 92,000 but also stresses the lengthier justification—making his defense rather than the slaughter the most memorable passage in the account.

Not surprisingly, even Caesar’s justification strains credulity. Caesar claims that “in the memory of our fathers” (*patrum nostrōrum memoriā*, 10) the same part of Helvetia that he attacked had killed the consul Cassius and enslaved his soldiers. Caesar’s portrayal makes the consul’s death seem recent and Caesar’s action a timely response, but from other sources we know that Cassius was killed in 107 BC, 50 years before Caesar’s attack. Caesar’s dating appears intentionally vague. Caesar is likewise misleading when he says that his encounter with the district which killed Cassius was “either by chance or by the plan of the immortal gods” (*sīve cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum*, 11): he not so subtly suggests that the gods approve his action and therefore readers should look upon Caesar as both just and favored by the gods.

Caesar’s ploys do not stop there. In addition to referring to himself in the third person, which makes his account seem objective rather than biased, he asserts in lines 14-16 that he is avenging not only a public injustice but a private wrong: the grandfather of Caesar’s father-in-law was killed along with Cassius. Even if the Romans found such a claim on behalf of a distant relative credible, the fact that Caesar did not know he was attacking this particular *pagus* shows that, whatever the outcome, vengeance was not among his primary motives.

As readers, therefore, we should view Caesar’s *Bellum Gallicum* not as a boring rehash of war but, just as the passage above, a lively attempt to depict events in a way that deflects blame and increases Caesar’s reputation among the Romans. Whether Caesar is vilifying the enemy (Book 1, 6) or drawing attention away from his haste and lack of preparation (Book 4, 5), we should be sceptical of Caesar’s account and ever vigilant to distinguish fact from bias.

## **Outline of the *Bellum Gallicum***

Scholars debate when Caesar wrote his *Commentaries*. One appealing theory is that he—perhaps with the help of staff—wrote and published each book individually while settled in winter-quarters. Such timing would have allowed Caesar to report his campaigns to the Senate and, more importantly, respond immediately to less favorable or accusatory reports spread by his political enemies.

### **Book 1 (58 BC): Campaign against the Helvetians. Campaign against Ariovistus.**

Caesar departs from the province of Transalpine Gaul, where he is currently governor, to stop the migration of 368,000 Helvetians from Helvetia, modern Switzerland, to western Gaul. Caesar then turns his forces against Ariovistus and the Germans in Eastern Gaul and drives them across the Rhine river, the customary boundary between the Gauls and Germans.

### **Book 2 (57 BC): Campaign against the Belgians.**

The Belgian Gauls amass forces to resist the Romans, and Caesar marches toward them. The Remi, a Belgic tribe, agree to assist Caesar. The fighting that ensues, particularly with the Belgian Nervii, is among the fiercest in the entire Gallic War. The Romans emerge victorious.

### **Book 3 (56 BC): Campaign against the Veneti**

As troops under Servius Galba fend off attacks by Gauls in the Alps, the Veneti, a tribe in northwest Gaul on the coast of the Atlantic, seize and imprison Roman envoys. Caesar's response is to fight the seafaring Veneti on the Atlantic ocean, capture their fortresses, and execute their leaders for seizing the Roman envoys. In the meantime, the quaestor Marcus Crassus defeats the Aquitani to the south.

### **Book 4 (55 BC): Caesar Bridges the Rhine. First Expedition to Britain**

The Suebi along with other Germanic tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, venture west across the Rhine into Belgian territory to avoid the fierce Germanic Suevi. After negotiations, Caesar repulses the Germans, builds a bridge to span the Rhine within ten days, and after brief skirmishes returns to Gaul. In late August, Caesar makes his initial expedition to Britain.

### **Book 5 (54 BC): Second Expedition to Britain.**

After landing in Britain unopposed, he proceeds inland and fights with Britons under the leadership of Cassivellaunus. After Caesar subdues Cassivellaunus at Kent, he returns to Gaul. On account of low grain supplies, the Romans settle into scattered winter-quarters, which are subsequently attacked by the Gauls. While the forces under the legates Titurius and Cotta are overwhelmed by the leader Ambiorix, those under Cicero and Labienus prevail over the Nervii and Treveri respectively.

### **Book 6 (53 BC): Expedition to Germany. Customs among the Gauls and Germans.**

As Labienus defeats the Treveri, Caesar assists Cicero's camp and pursues Ambiorix and the Eburones. He briefly crosses the Rhine river to prevent Ambiorix from receiving assistance from the Germans, but Ambiorix continues to elude the Romans. Caesar describes the organization and customs of the Gauls, the religion and warfare among the Germans, and the animals found in the Hercynian forest in Germania.

### **Book 7 (52 BC): The Gauls Rally and Fall under Vercingetorix**

The Gauls rally under the leader Vercingetorix. After several sieges and battles, Caesar besieges Vercingetorix and the main Gaul force at Alesia. When the Gauls eventually surrender, Vercingetorix is led to Rome, where he will eventually be led in chains and executed to celebrate Caesar's triumph.

**Book 8 (51 BC):** Written by Aulus Hirtius, a legate of Caesar, possibly after Julius Caesar's death, the book details how Caesar's quells small uprisings and rewards loyal Romans and Gauls with gifts.

## The Life of Julius Caesar

B.C.

- 100 Caesar is born on July 12<sup>th</sup>
  - 87 Flamen Dialis, selected to priesthood
  - 83 Marries Cornelia, daughter of Cinna
  - 80-78 Serves in the army in Asia Minor
  - 76-75 Studies oratory in Rhodes
  - 68 Quaestor, elected
  - 67 Marries Pompeia
  - 65 Aedile, elected
  - 63 Pontifex Maximus, elected
  - 62 Praetor, elected
  - 61 Proprator, serves in Spain
  - 60 Forms First Triumvirate with Pompey, Crassus
  - 59 Consul, marries Calpurnia
  - 58-49 Proconsul in Gaul
  - 56 Triumvirate renewed at Luca
  - 50 Openly breaks with Pompey
  - 49 Crosses the Rubicon, civil war begins
  - 48 Battle of Pharsalia in Greece, defeats Pompey's forces
  - 47 Subdues Egypt
  - 46 Battle of Thapsus in North Africa, defeats Cato and senators, Dictator for 10 years
  - 45 Battle of Munda in Spain, defeats sons of Pompey, Imperator for life
  - 44 Assassinated by a conspiracy on March 15<sup>th</sup>
- 
- 43 Grand-nephew Gaius Octavius made heir, renamed Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus
  - Second Triumvirate formed by Octavian, Mark Antony, and Lepidus
  - 31 Battle of Actium, Octavian defeats Mark Antony and Cleopatra, becomes sole ruler
  - 31-AD 14 Octavian receives the cognomen "Augustus," becomes the first Emperor

## How to Use this Commentary

Research shows that, as we learn how to read in a second language, a combination of reading and direct vocabulary instruction is statistically superior to reading alone. One of the purposes of this book is to help readers identify the most frequent words and encourage active acquisition of vocabulary.

### 1. Skim through the book and familiarize yourself with every grammar box and the appendix.

### 2. Master the core vocabulary list as soon as possible.

#### **A. Develop a daily regimen for memorizing vocabulary and forms before you begin reading.**

Start with an intensive review of the running core list on the next page. Although a substantial number of core vocabulary words come within the first few lessons of the commentary, readers have already reviewed most of these words in first year Latin and can devote their efforts to mastering the handful of words in the initial lessons that they have never encountered.

**B. Download and use the core list flashcards** available online (ppt or jpg format). Research has shown that you must review new words at least seven to nine times before you are able to commit them to long-term memory. Flashcards are particularly efficient at promoting repetition. As you work, delete flashcards that you have mastered and focus your efforts on the remaining words.

Digital flashcards for less frequent vocabulary (occurring 3-4 times) will appear online in time.

### 3. Read actively and make lots of educated guesses

**A. Persistence counts.** Caesar is very consistent in his use of vocabulary and grammar, and so while the readings will maintain the same level of difficulty, you will become a much better reader with time. The more earnestly you learn vocabulary and new grammar in the early readings, the more fluently you will be able to read later passages without much preparation.

**B. Read in Latin word order.** Initially, readers have a tendency both (i) to scan through the entire Latin sentence quickly to order to attain a sense of the constructions and (ii) to treat the sentence as a puzzle and jump around the passage from subject to verb to object and so forth. Ideally, you should read in Latin word order. Whatever method you use, always review the sentence which you have just translated in Latin word order. Over time, as you acquire more vocabulary and your comfort with Caesar increases, make reading in Latin word order your primary method of reading. It is a lot of fun, and with persistence it is very satisfying.

### 4. Reread a passage or lesson immediately after you have completed it.

Repeated readings not only help you commit Latin to memory but also increase your ability to read the Latin as Latin. Caesar's consistent use of vocabulary and grammar makes it possible for readers to develop reading proficiency very quickly. Always read the words out loud (or at least whisper them to yourself). While you may be inclined to translate the text into English as you reread, develop the habit of reading Latin as Latin and acquiring meaning without using English.

### 5. Reread the most recent passage or lesson immediately before you begin a new one.

This additional repetition will strengthen your ability to recognize vocabulary, forms, and syntax quickly, bolster your confidence, and most importantly provide you with much-needed context as you begin the next selection in the text.

## Caesar Running Core Vocabulary (5 or more times)

The following list includes all words in the Latin selections that occur five or more times arranged in a running vocabulary list. The number in the left column indicates in which lesson the word first occurs. The author tabulated the frequency lists by collating all of Caesar's words into a single list and counting them. Flashcards (.ppt and .jpg) are available online. For an alphabetized list of the core words, readers should consult the glossary.

- 1 **ā, ab:** (away) from; by, 80
- 1 **absum, -esse, āfuī:** be absent, lack, 6
- 1 **ad:** to, toward; near, at 110
- 1 **alius, -a, -ud:** other, another, else, 13
- 1 **animus, -ī m:** mind, spirit; *pl.* courage, 6
- 1 **appellō (1):** to call, call by name, 5
- 1 **atque:** and, and also, and even, 60
- 1 **aut:** or (aut...aut – either...or), 32
- 1 **Belgae, -ārum m.:** Belgians, 6
- 1 **bellum, -ī, n.:** war, 16
- 1 **capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum:** to take, capture, seize, 11
- 1 **causa, -ae f.:** reason, cause; case, 21
- 1 **contineō, -ēre, -nuī, -tentum:** to hold or keep together, 9
- 1 **cum:** with (+ abl.); when, since, although, 86
- 1 **dē:** (down) from; about, concerning, 41
- 1 **dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus:** to say, speak, tell, call, name, 18
- 1 **et:** and, also, even, 167
- 1 **etiam:** also, even, besides, 8
- 1 **ferē:** almost, nearly, closely, 7
- 1 **fīnis, -is m./f.:** end, border; territory, 17
- 1 **flūmen, -inis n.:** river, stream, 9
- 1 **fortis, -e:** strong, brave, valiant, 7
- 1 **Gallia, -ae f.:** Gaul, 17
- 1 **Gallus, -a, -um:** Gallic; *subst.* a Gaul, 15
- 1 **Germānus, -a, -um:** German, 9
- 1 **gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus:** to carry (on), wage, 8
- 1 **Helvētius, -a, -um:** Helvetian; *subst.* a Helvetian 16
- 1 **hic, haec, hoc:** this, these, 92
- 1 **in:** in, on (abl.), into, to (acc.) 173
- 1 **initium, -ī n.:** beginning, entrance, 6
- 1 **inter:** between, among (+ acc.), 15
- 1 **ipse, ipsa, ipsum:** -self; the very, 17
- 1 **is, ea, id:** this, that; he, she, it, 133
- 1 **longē:** far, at a distant, 6
- 1 **noster, nostra, nostrum:** our, 36
- 1 **obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum:** hold, maintain, 6
- 1 **omnis, omne:** every, all, 72
- 1 **pars, partis, f.:** part, share, side 43
- 1 **pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī:** to stretch out, reach, extend to, 7
- 1 **proelium, -iī n.:** battle, combat, 15
- 1 **prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus:** keep off, prohibit, 6
- 1 **prōvincia, -ae f.:** province, 7

- 1 **proximus, -a, -um**: nearest, very close, 12  
 1 **-que**: and, 108  
 1 **quī, quae, quod (quis? quid?)**: who, which, that, 225  
 1 **reliquus, -a, um**: remaining, the rest of, 28  
 1 **Rhēnus, -ī m.**: Rhine River, 9  
 1 **Rhodanus, -a, -um**: Rhone, 5  
 1 **sē**: himself, herself, itself, themselves, 74  
 1 **Sēquanus, -a, -um**: Sequanian, 5  
 1 **sum, esse, fuī, futūrum**: to be, 165  
 1 **suus, -a, -um**: his, her, its, their own, 54  
 1 **tertius, -a, -um**: third, 8  
 1 **trēs, tria**: three, 7  
 1 **ūnus, -a, -um**: one, 29  
 1 **virtūs, -ūtis f.**: valor, manhood, excellence, 11  
 2 **ager, agrī m.**: field, land; farm, 8  
 2 **alter, -era, -erum**: other (of two), 12  
 2 **altus, -a, -um**: high, lofty, tall, 5  
 2 **amīcītia, -ae, f.**: friendship, 12  
 2 **annus, -ī m.**: year, 11  
 2 **apud**: among, at the house of (acc.), 7  
 2 **arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum**: to judge, think, 10  
 2 **autem**: however, moreover, 5  
 2 **cīvitās cīvitātis, f.**: state, citizenship, 20  
 2 **confirmō (1)**: make strong, confirm strengthen, 5  
 2 **constituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus**: decide, establish, resolve, 14  
 2 **copia, -ae f.**: abundance, supply; troops, 12  
 2 **dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus**: lead, draw, 7  
 2 **ē, ex**: out from, from, out of (+ abl.), 72  
 2 **facilis, -e**: easy; adv. facile, easily, 10  
 2 **faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum**: do, make, perform; grant, 40  
 2 **finitimus, -a, -um**: neighboring; subst. neighbors, 6  
 2 **frūmentum, -ī n.**: grain, 10  
 2 **habeō, -ēre, habuī, -itus**: have, hold; consider, 32  
 2 **homō, -inis m./f.**: man, mortal, human, 15  
 2 **imperium, -ī n.**: command, power, 7  
 2 **inferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātum**: wage, carry on, 7  
 2 **iter, itineris n.**: way, road, route, journey, 17  
 2 **locus, -ī m.**: place, region, location, 31  
 2 **magnus, -a, -um**: great, large; mighty, important, 29  
 2 **maximus, -a, -um**: greatest, largest, 15  
 2 **mille pl. mīlia, ium n.**: thousand, 9  
 2 **minor, minus**: less, smaller, 7  
 2 **multitūdo, inis f.**: multitude, population, people, 11  
 2 **numerus, -ī m.**: number, multitude, 13  
 2 **Orgetorix, -is m.**: Orgetorix, 6  
 2 **passus, -ūs**: pace, step, 7  
 2 **pāx, pācis f.**: peace, quiet, rest, 6  
 2 **permovēō, -ēre**: to move deeply, trouble, excite, agitate, 5

- 2 **persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum**: persuade, convince, 12  
 2 **possum, posse, potuī**: be able, can, avail, 40  
 2 **praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus**: perform, show, be better, 6  
 2 **prō**: before, for, in behalf of (abl.), 16  
 2 **profectio, -ōnis f.**: departure, 5  
 2 **proficīscor, -ī, -fectus**: set out, depart, 23  
 2 **regnum, -ī n.**: royal power, kingdom, realm, 8  
 2 **rēs, reī, f.**: thing, matter, affair, business, 64  
 2 **tōtus -a, -um**: whole, entire, 7  
 2 **undique**: (from) everywhere, from or on all sides, 5  
 2 **ut**: as, just as, when (+ ind.); (so) that, in order that, 59  
 3 **ac**: and, and also, and even, 24  
 3 **accipiō**: to take without effort, receive, get, accept, 10  
 3 **arma, -ōrum n.**: arms, equipment, tools, 7  
 3 **cōgō, cōgere, cōēgī, cōactum**: to collect; compel, 11  
 3 **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum**: to try, 6  
 3 **diēs, -ēī m./f.**: day, time, season, 33  
 3 **dō, dare, dedī, datum**: give; grant, 18  
 3 **īdem, eadem, idem**: the same, 14  
 3 **exercitus, -ūs m.**: (trained) army, 9  
 3 **filius, -īī m.**: son, 5  
 3 **ille, illa, illud**: that, those, 22  
 3 **incitō (1)**: put into motion, urge on, 5  
 3 **maximē**: exceedingly especially, 6  
 3 **mors, mortis, f.**: death, 9  
 3 **multus, -a, -um**: much, many, 11  
 3 **nē**: lest, that not, no, not, 13  
 3 **neque**: and not, nor (neque...neque = neither...nor), 27  
 3 **nōn**: not, by no means, not at all, 36  
 3 **ob**: on account of, because of (acc.), 5  
 3 **ōrātiō, -ionis f.**: speaking, speech, 8  
 3 **per**: through, across (acc) 18  
 3 **populus, -ī m.**: people, nation, 9  
 3 **probō (1)**: approve, commend, 5  
 3 **Rōmānus, -a, -um**: of Rome, Roman, 15  
 3 **spērō (1)**: hope (for), expect, 6  
 3 **tempus, temporis, n.**: time, occasion, 11  
 4 **cōnsilium, -īī n.**: plan, counsel, 12  
 4 **conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus**: come together, assemble, 9  
 4 **duo, duae, duo**: two, 8  
 4 **existimō (1)**: judge, consider, think, 9  
 4 **iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum**: to order, command, 17  
 4 **nihil**: nothing, 10  
 4 **nūllus, -a, -um**: none, no, no one, 9  
 4 **oppugnō (1)**: capture by assault, attack, 6  
 4 **perīculum, -ī n.**: risk, danger, peril, 14  
 4 **post**: after, behind (+ acc.); afterward, next, 5  
 4 **prīvō (1)**: deprive of, rob, strip from (abl), 5

- 4 **quisque, quidque**: each one, each person, 9  
 4 **recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**: take back, recover, 10  
 4 **singulus, -a, -um**: one by one, separate, 5  
 4 **spēs, -ē f.**: hope, expectation, 6  
 4 **trānseō, -īre, -īī (īvī), itus**: pass (by), 6  
 4 **ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum**: use, employ (abl.), 5  
 4 **videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum**: to see, 14  
 5 **adventus, -ūs m.**: arrival, approach, 7  
 5 **Caesar, -aris m.**: Caesar, 40  
 5 **certus, -a, -um**: definite, sure, certain, reliable, 8  
 5 **dum**: while, as long as, until, 6  
 5 **facultās, -tātis f.**: opportunity, power, skill, ability, 5  
 5 **imperō (1)**: command, order, bid, 7  
 5 **lēgātus, -ī m.**: an envoy, legate, 16  
 5 **legio, -ōnis f.**: legion, (~4200 soldiers), 32  
 5 **licet**: impersonal, it is allowed or permitted, 5  
 5 **mīles, mīlitis, m.**: soldier, 33  
 5 **mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus**: send, hurl, dismiss, 20  
 5 **pervenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum**: arrive, 8  
 5 **sī**: if (only), whether, in case that, 30  
 5 **sine**: without (abl.), 8  
 5 **sub**: under, below, beneath, underneath, 5  
 5 **tamen**: however, nevertheless, 14  
 5 **teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum**: to hold, keep, 6  
 5 **ūllus, -a, -um**: any, 5  
 5 **volō, velle, voluī**: will, wish, be willing, 13  
 6 **animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum**: turn mind to, notice 5  
 6 **at**: but; mind you; but, you say, 7  
 6 **barbarus, -a, -um**: foreign, savage, 5  
 6 **cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum**: to learn, come to know, pf. know, 14  
 6 **co(n)iciō, -ere, -īcī**: throw together, throw, take oneself, 10  
 6 **consuescō, -ere, -ēvī, -suētum**: to accustom, 8  
 6 **ēgredior, -ī, -gressus**: go out, disembark, 5  
 6 **equitātus, -ūs m.**: cavalry, 5  
 6 **genus, generis, n.**: origin, kind, sort, 10  
 6 **gravis, -e**: heavy, serious, severe; venerable, 9  
 6 **hostis, -is m./f.**: stranger, enemy, foe, 43  
 6 **longus -a, -um**: long, 8  
 6 **magnitūdo, -inis f.**: greatness, size, 5  
 6 **manus, manūs, f.**: hand; group, 9  
 6 **nam**: for, 9  
 6 **nāvis, nāvis, f.**: ship, boat, 23  
 6 **nisi**: if not, unless 6  
 6 **paulus, -a, -um**: little, small, 9  
 6 **pēs, pedis m.**: foot, 5  
 6 **plērumque**: for the most part, mostly, commonly, 5  
 6 **propter**: on account of, because of, 5  
 6 **pugna, -ae f.**: battle, fight, 7

- 6 **pugnō (1):** to fight, 9  
 6 **subsequor, -ī, secūtus sum:** follow after or behind, 7  
 6 **summus, -a, -um:** top of, highest (part of) 10  
 6 **telum, -ī n.:** projective, weapon, blow, 9  
 6 **ūsus, -ūs m.:** use, practice, application, 10  
 7 **aliquī, -qua, -quod:** some, any, definite, 8  
 7 **coepī, coepisse, coeptum:** to begin, 9  
 7 **compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum:** fill up, fill, 6  
 7 **conspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus:** see, behold, 5  
 7 **dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrum:** be lacking, lack, fail, 6  
 7 **eques, equitis m.:** horseman, rider, 12  
 7 **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus:** carry, bear, endure, 7  
 7 **impetus, -ūs m.:** attack, assault, onset, 7  
 7 **ordō, -inis m.:** order, line, array; status, 6  
 7 **perturbō (1):** confuse, disturb, throw into confusion, 6  
 7 **pīmus -a -um:** first, 15  
 7 **pūblicus, -a, -um:** public, common, 11  
 7 **signum -ī, n.:** sign, signal; gesture, seal, 5  
 7 **subsidiū, iī n.:** reserve troops; third line of battle, 5  
 7 **tantus, -a, -um:** so great, so large, 10  
 7 **tum:** then, at that time, 12  
 7 **uterque, utraque, utrumque:** each (of two) 8  
 8 **Britannia, -ae f.:** Britain, 6  
 8 **castra, -ōrum n.:** camp, encampment, 23  
 8 **dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum:** report, offer 8  
 8 **dēmonstrō (1):** to show, demonstrate, 5  
 8 **nox, noctis, f.:** night, 9  
 8 **obsēs, obsidis m./f.:** hostage, 5  
 8 **petō, petere, petīvī, petītum:** seek, aim at, 7  
 8 **sed:** but, moreover, however, 13  
 8 **sēsē:** emphatic form of reflexive sē, 14  
 8 **subitō:** suddenly, 5  
 8 **superō (1):** surpass, overcome, 6  
 8 **superus, -a, -um:** upper, higher, above, 9  
 8 **veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus:** come, go, 14  
 9 **accidō, -ere, accidī:** to happen, fall to, 13  
 9 **complūres n.:** several, 5  
 9 **discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum:** to go away, depart, 9  
 9 **efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus:** make, form, 5  
 9 **impedīmentum, -ī n.:** baggage, impediment, 6  
 9 **ita:** so, thus, 7  
 9 **itaque:** and so, 6  
 10 **casus, -ūs m.:** misfortune, mishap; fall 5  
 10 **consuētūdo, -inis f.:** custom, habit, 5  
 10 **etsī:** even if, although, though, 5  
 10 **intermittō, -ere:** interrupt, discontinue, leave off, 5  
 10 **maior, maius:** greater, 6  
 11 **cohors, cohortis f.:** cohort, company, troop 14

- 11 **interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum**: kill, slay, destroy, 14  
 11 **interim**: meanwhile, in the meantime, 5  
 11 **premō, -ere, pressī, pressus**: check, pursue, control, 7  
 11 **sustineō, -ēre, -uī**: hold up, sustain, 8  
 12 **celeritās, -tātis f.**: quickness, swiftness, speed, 5  
 12 **celeriter**: quickly, swiftly, speedily, 6  
 12 **circiter**: (round) about, not far from, 7  
 12 **nuntius, -iī m.**: messenger, 6  
 12 **quantus, -a, -um**: how great, much, many, 6  
 13 **contrōversia, -ae f.**: dispute, debate, 7  
 13 **disciplīna, -ae f.**: training, instruction, 5  
 13 **Druidēs, -um m.**: Druids, 6  
 13 **praemium, -i n.**: reward, prize, 5  
 14 **ibi**: there, in that place, 5  
 14 **littera, -ae f.**: letter of the alphabet, letter, literature, 12  
 14 **ratio, ratiōnis, f.**: calculation, account, method, 5  
 15 **circumveniō, -īre**: to come around, encircle, 6  
 15 **vīta, -ae, f.**: life, 5  
 16 **ponō, ponere, posuī, positum**: to put, place, 6  
 17 **concilium, -iī n.**: meeting, rendezvous, 6  
 18 **Ambiorix, -rigis m.**: Ambiorix, 15  
 18 **Cicero, Cicerōnis m.**: Cicero 14  
 18 **Cotta, -ae m.**: Cotta, 10  
 18 **Crassus, -i m.**: Crassus, 5  
 18 **Eburōnēs, -um m.**: Eburones (German), 5  
 18 **hīberna, -ōrum n.**: winter-quarters, 26  
 18 **Labiēnus, i m.**: Labienus, 5  
 18 **Lucius, -i m.**: Lucius, 10  
 18 **Nerviī, -iōrum m.**: Nervii (Belgic Gauls) 9  
 18 **Quintus, -i m.**: Quintus, 6  
 18 **Sabīnus, i m.**: Sabinus, 7  
 18 **Titurius, -i m.**: Titurius, 8  
 19 **ascendō, -ere, -i, -ēnsus**: ascend, mount 2  
 19 **oppugnātio, -tiōnis f.**: an assault, 6  
 19 **resistō, -ere, -stitī**: stand still, halt; oppose, 5  
 19 **vallum, -i n.**: wall, fortification, palisade, 11  
 20 **Aduātucī, -ōrum m.**: Aduatuci (in Belgae), 5  
 20 **commūnis, -e**: common, 6  
 21 **salūs, -ūtis f.**: safety, refuge; health, 10  
 21 **tūtus, -a, -um**: safe, secure, guarded, 7  
 22 **calamitās, -tātis f.**: loss, misfortune, calamity, disaster, 5  
 22 **quidem**: indeed, in fact, certainly, 6  
 22 **victoria, -ae f.**: victory, 7  
 23 **relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum**: to leave behind, 7  
 25 **accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus**: approach, 5  
 28 **mūnītio, -iōnis f.**: fortification, paving, 7  
 28 **turris, turris f.**: tower, walled tower, 7  
 32 **Pullo, Pullōnis, m.**: Pullo, 6 and **Vorēnus, -i m.**: Vorenus, 5

## Abbreviations

abs.	absolute	m.	masculine
acc.	accusative	n.	neuter
act.	active	nom.	nominative
adj.	adjective	obj.	object
adv.	adverb	PPP	Perfect passive participle
app.	appositive	ppl.	participle
comp.	comparative	pass	passive
dat.	dative	pf.	perfect
dep.	deponent	pl.	plural
d.o.	direct object	plpf.	pluperfect
f.	feminine	pred.	predicate
fut.	future	prep.	preposition
gen.	genitive	pres.	present
imp.	imperative	pron.	pronoun
impf.	imperfect	reflex.	reflexive
impers.	impersonal	rel.	relative
indic.	indicative	seq.	sequence
i.o.	indirect object	sg.	singular
inf.	infinitive	subj.	subject or subjunctive
inter.	interrogative	superl.	superlative
l.	line	voc.	vocative
ll.	lines		

---

## Citations in Caesar

The universal method for referring to pages in any edition of Caesar's *Commentarii dē Bellō Gallicō* is through a sequence of two or even three numbers: e.g. IV.24.2 or 4.24. The first number denotes the book in *dē Bellō Gallicō*; the second number, the paragraph; and the third number, if it is included, a subsection about the length of one sentence. Throughout this commentary I have chosen to use Roman numerals to indicate the book number (e.g. IV), but it is not uncommon for scholars to use Arabic numerals (e.g. 4). The paragraph number is always an Arabic numeral and is uniform from one edition of Caesar to the next (e.g. IV.24, 4.24). In this book I place the paragraph number in boldface at the beginning of each paragraph. This system allows readers to pick up any edition of Caesar in English or Latin and, regardless of the page numbering of that edition, locate a particular passage in Caesar.

Each paragraph in *dē Bellō Gallicō* can also be divided into subsections, which may be included or left out of citations (e.g. 4.24.1 or simply 4.24). In this commentary I have chosen for pedagogical reasons to include the numbers of these subsections within the text itself. In a classroom setting, teachers can conveniently ask individual students to recite and translate by subsection and not have to refer awkwardly to the initial words in each sentence.

**Line numbers**, located in the inside margin of the text, are peculiar to this commentary. I have included them so that I can efficiently refer to words and phrases in the grammar and readers can easily locate those words and phrases. While you can refer to the line numbers in class discussions, use only the book, paragraph, and subsection numbers when you cite Caesar in written work.

I'm going to spare the defeated, I'm going to speak to the crowd.  
I'm going to spare the defeated, 'cause I'm going to speak to the crowd.  
I'm going to teach peace to the conquered, I'm going to tame the proud.

- Bob Dylan

To make the ancients speak, we must feed them with our own blood.

- von Wilamowitz-Moellendorff

1.1 Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, 1  
 aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur.

2. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, legibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs  
 Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

3. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque 5  
 hūmānitāte Prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs  
 saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent  
 important, 4. Proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt,  
 quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā de causā Helvetiī quoque reliquōs  
 Gallōs virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs 10  
 contendunt, cum aut suīs finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum finibus  
 bellum gerunt.

5. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā  
 flūmine Rhodanō, continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum,  
 attingit etiam ab Sēquanis et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum, vergit ad 15  
 septentrionēs. 6. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad  
 inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentrionem et orientem  
 sōlem. 7. Aquitania ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrenaeōs montēs et eam partem  
 Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et  
 septentrionēs. 20

**Aquitānī, -ōrum m.:** Aquitani, 2  
**Aquitania, -ae f.:** Aquitania, 1  
**attingō, -ere, tigī, tāctum:** touch to, border, 1  
**Celtae, -ārum m.:** Celts, 1  
**commeō (1):** to travel, go to and fro, 1  
**contendō, -ere, -ī, -ntus:** strive; hasten, 4  
**continenter:** continuously, incessantly, 1  
**cotīdiānus, -a, -um:** daily, of every day, 3  
**cultus, -ūs m.:** culture, refinement, 2  
**differō, -ferre, -ferre:** differ, carry different ways, 2  
**dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus:** divide, distribute, 4  
**effēminō (1):** soften, make into women, 1  
**extrēmus, -a, -um:** farthest, outermost, 2  
**Garumna, -ae f.:** Garumna river, 4  
**Hispānia, -ae f.:** Spain, 2  
**hūmānitās, -tātis f.:** humanity, nature, 1  
**importō (1):** bring in, introduce, import, 1  
**incolō, -ere, -uī:** inhabit, dwell on, 3  
**inferus, -a, -um:** below, lower, 3  
**īnstitūm, ī n.:** institution, practice, custom, 2

**lēx, -lēgis f.:** law, regulation, decree, 3  
**lingua, ae f.:** tongue, language, 2  
**Mātrōna, -ae f.:** Matrona (Marne) river, 1  
**mercātor, -ōris m.:** merchant, trader, 1  
**minimē:** least of all, least, 1  
**mons, montis m.:** mountain, mount, 4  
**occāsus, -ūs m.:** fall, destruction, 2  
**Oceānus, ī m.:** Oceanus, 3  
**orior, -īrī, ortus:** arise, rise, spring, 3  
**praecēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum:** surpass, 1  
**proptereā:** on this account, therefore, 4  
**Pyrenaeus, -a, -um:** of the Pyrenees, 1  
**quoque:** also, 2  
**saepe:** often, 3  
**septentrionēs, -um m.:** north, (7 stars), 3  
**Sēquana, -ae:** Sequana (Seine) River, 1  
**sōl, sōlis m.:** sun, 3  
**spectō (1):** watch, observe, behold, inspect, 3  
**trans;** over, across (+ acc.), 3  
**vergō, -ere, versī:** turn, bend, 1

- 1 **est...dīvīsa**: *is divided*; dīvīsa is a predicate adjective and not part of a perfect pass. verb  
**quārum ūnam...aliā...tertiā**: *of which (parts) one (part)...another (part)...a third (part)*; a genitive at the beginning of the clause is often, as here, a partitive gen. (gen. of whole)
- 2 **Aquītānī**: *Aquitanians (inhabit)*; add incolunt which is missing through ellipsis (omission)  
**Tertiā (incolunt) quī...**: *(those) who...* (inhabit) *the third*; the missing antecedent of the relative clause is subject of missing incolunt  
**ipsōrum linguā**: *in the language of (these) very ones*; i.e. of the Gauls, ipse usually modifies a noun, which is missing and must be supplied; linguā is an ablative of respect (in respect to...)  
**nostrā**: *in our (language)*; supply linguā  
**Celtae...Gallī**: nom. predicates of appellatur
- 3 **linguā, institūtīs, lēgibus**: *in...in...in...*; “in respect to...,” all three are abl. of respect
- 4 **Garumna flūmen (dīvidit)**: subject, add verb  
**Matrona et Sēquana**: nom. pl. with a 3<sup>rd</sup> sg. verb because the rivers form a single boundary; supply Gallōs as acc. direct object
- 5 **Hōrum omnium**: *of all these*; or “among all these,” partitive gen., as in line 1, Caesar often uses a a genitive at the beginning of a clause and then specifies the parts within the clause  
**propterea quod**: *because*; lit. “on this account because,” which is a pleonasm (redundancy)
- 6 **Prōvinciae**: *of the Province*; i.e. Gallia Transalpina, the area in southern France controlled by the Romans. Although the word prōvincia is a general term, the Romans referred to this province as “the Province”. This edition uses the capital “P” to distinguish it from other provinces.
- 6 **longissimē**: *very far*; superlative adverb longē  
**ad eōs** *to those...*; eōs is demonstrative
- 7 **ea quae** *those things which...*; neut. pl.
- ad effēminandōs...**: *for softening...*; lit. “for courage going to be softened” ad + gerundive (fut. pass. pple) often expresses purpose; when translating, readers should employ a gerund-gerundive flip: translate the gerundive as a gerund (e.g. softening) and the noun modified by the gerundive as an object of the gerund
- 8 **Germānīs**: dat. with special adj. proximī
- 9 **quibuscum**: cum quibus  
**Quā dē causā**: *for which reason*; “concerning which reason” quā modifies causā; as often, Caesar places the adjective, here a relative adj., before the preposition
- 10 **virtūte**: *in (respect to) valor*; abl. respect  
**quod**: *because*  
**cum...prohibent...gerunt**: *since...*; cum + indicative, not a preposition of suīs finibus.
- 11 **suīs finibus**: *from their borders*; abl. of separation (a construction which includes but is not limited to place from which), governed by prohibent, “(Helvetians) keep”  
**suīs**: *their*; Helvetians’, reflexive possessive  
**eōs**: *them*; i.e. Germans, personal pronoun  
**ipsī**: *(they) themselves*; Helvetians
- 12 **eōrum**: *their*; i.e. Germans
- 13 **eōrum**: *of these (three parts)*; partitive gen.  
**obtinēre**: ind. discourse (that clause), Gallōs is acc. subj. and quam is acc. d.o.  
**dictum est**: *it has been said*; as in line 2 above
- 14 **continētur**: governs all three abl. of means, which are missing conjunctions, asyndeton
- 15 **ab Sēquānīs...**: *from (the side of)...*
- 16 **oriuntur**: *rise*; pres. deponent, orior
- 17 **spectant in septentrionem**: *looks to the northern...*; i.e. opens up to the northeast  
**orientem**: *eastern*; “rising” sun; pres. pple.
- 18 **eam partem**: *that part*; demonstrative
- 19 **ad Hispāniam**: *near Hispania*; with est  
**spectat**: *looks to...*; i.e. opens up to...

### Gerund-Gerundive Flip

A gerundive (effeminandus,-a,-um, line 7) is a future passive participle. It is a verbal adjective which agrees with a noun in case, number, and gender. Because it is awkward to translate (e.g. going to be softened), readers should often employ a “gerund-gerundive flip” and translate the gerundive as a gerund, a verbal noun (e.g. softening), and the noun modified by the gerundive as the gerund’s object. Ad + gerund + object is in fact uncommon in Latin but it is an easy way to translate ad + noun + gerundive into suitable English. This is a popular construction in Caesar. So, be prepared.

#### Flip

Ad animōs effēminandōs

*for courage (going) to be softened*



ad effēminandum animōs

*for softening courage*

2.1 Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. 1  
 Messālā, et M. Pīsōne cōsulibus, regnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem  
 nōbilitātis fēcit et civitatī persuāsit ut dē finibus suīs cum omnibus copiīs  
 exīrent: 2. perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtū Galliae  
 imperiō potūrī. 5

3. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī naturā Helvetiī  
 continentur: unā ex parte flūmine Rhēno lātissimō atque altissimō, quī  
 agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō,  
 quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodānō,  
 quī provinciam nostram ab Helvetiīs dividit. 4. Hīs rēbus fiēbat ut et minus 10  
 lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum īferre possent; 5. Quā ex  
 parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. 6. Prō multitudīne  
 autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habēre  
 arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem  
 CLXXX patēbant. 15

3.1 Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōstituērunt ea  
 quae ad proficiēscendum pertinērent comparāre, iumentōrum et carrōrum  
 quam maximum numerum coemere, sementēs quam maximās facere, ut in  
 itinere cōpia frumentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et  
 amīcitiā cōfirmāre. 2. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse 20  
 dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

**addūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum:** draw/lead to, 4  
**adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** affect, afflict, 3  
**angustus, -a, -um:** narrow, confined, 4  
**auctōritās, -tātis f.:** influence, clout, 3  
**bellō (1):** to wage war, fight, 1  
**biennium, -ī n.:** a period of two years, 1  
**carrus, -ī m.:** wagon for, baggage, wagon, 2  
**coemō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum:** buy up, 1  
**comparō (1):** prepare, get ready, provide, 4  
**conficiō, -ere:** to exhaust, finish, 4  
**coniūrātiō, -ōnis f.:** pact, union, conspiracy 3  
**cōsul, -is m.:** consul, 3  
**cupiditās, -tātis f.:** desire, eagerness for, 1  
**cupidus, -a, -um:** desirous, eager, keen, 2  
**dīs, dītis adj:** rich, wealthy, 2  
**dividō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus:** divide, distribute, 4  
**dolor, -ōris m.:** pain, grief, anger, passion, 2  
**exeō, -īre, -ī (ivī), -itus:** go out, 4  
**fiō, fierī, factus:** become, be made, 3  
**fortitudō, -dinis f.:** strength, courage, 1  
**glōria, -ae, f.:** glory, fame, 2  
**indūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum:** draw/lead in, 1  
**iumentum, -ī n.:** beast of burden, 1

**Iūra, -ae f.:** Iura (a mountain range), 3  
**lacus, -ūs m.:** lake, pond, pool, 2  
**latē:** widely, far and wide, 2  
**lātitudō, -dinis f.:** breadth, width, 1  
**latus, -a, -um:** wide, 1  
**Lemannus, -ī m.:** (w/ lacus) Lake Geneva, 1  
**lēx, -lēgis f.:** law, regulation, decree, 3  
**longitudō, -inis f.:** length, width, 2  
**M.:** Marcus, 3  
**Messāla, -ae f.:** Messala, 1  
**mons, montis m.:** mountain, mount, 4  
**natūra, -ae, f.:** nature, 3  
**nōbilis, -e:** noble, renowned, 3  
**nōbilitās, -tātis f.:** nobility, renown, 1  
**pateō, -ēre, -uī:** lie open, extend, 1  
**perfacilis, -e:** very easy; *adv.* very easily 2  
**Pisō, Pīsōnis m.:** Piso, 2  
**potior, -īrī, -itus:** gain, win (*abl.*), 2  
**satis:** enough, sufficient, 2  
**sementis, -is f.:** sowing, planting, 1  
**suppetō, -ere, ivī, itum:** suffice, be at hand 2  
**vagor, -ārī:** wander, roam, go to and fro, 1

- 1 **nōbilissimus, ditissimus**: superlative adjs.  
**fuit**: pf. sum, esse  
**M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus**: *when Marcus Messala and Marcus (Pupius) Piso were consuls*; “with Messala and Piso (being) consuls” abl. abs. i.e. 61 BC, Romans named the year after their annually elected consuls; since there is no pple. for sum, esse, the subject and predicate are the abl. abs.
- 2 **regnī**: *for the kingship*; objective gen. governed by cupiditāte, equivalent to “he desires kingship
- 3 **persuāsīt ut...**: *persuaded (dative) that...*; this common verb in Caesar governs an indirect command (ut + impf. subj. in secondary seq.)
- 4 **exīrent**: *they come out*; impf. subjunctive, exeō, exīre in an ind. command, which can often be translated as an inf.: “persuaded...to come out”  
**perfacile esse...**: *(and) that it is very easy...*; ind. discourse also governed by persuāsīt above; asyndeton, supply a conjunction between the ind. command above and perfacile esse  
**cum...praestārent**: *since they excelled*; causal with impf. subjunctive governing abl. respect  
**tōtius**: gen. sg. (-ius) modifying Galliae
- 5 **potīrī**: *to possess*; dep. inf. potior governs an ablative object
- 6 **id...persuāsīt**: *he persuaded them (to do) this*  
**hōc...quod**: *by this (reason)...because*; abl. of cause  
**facilius**: comparative adv. facilis, facile
- 7 **ūnā ex parte**: *on one side*; “from one part”  
**flūmine Rhēnō**: abl. means; supply the verb “continentur,” an example of ellipsis
- 8 **agrum Helvētium**: *Helvetian land*  
**alterā ex parte**: *on another side*; see line 7  
**monte Iūrā**: *by Iura range*; add “continentur”
- 9 **tertiā (ex parte)**: parallel with line 7 and 8  
**lacū Lemannō**: abl. means, add “continentur”
- 10 **hīs rēbus**: *because of...*; abl. of cause  
**fiēbat ut**: *it happened that...*; fiō governs ut + impf. subjunctive (noun result clause); the subjunctives are impf. in secondary sequence because the main verb is impf.
- 11 **vagārentur, possent**: impf. subj. vagor and possum; in result clauses these are translated as normal impf. indicatives; vagor is deponent  
**minus**: comparative adverb; minor, minus
- 11 **facile**: *easily*; irreg. adverb from facilis, facile  
**finitimīs**: *on neighbors*; dat. of compound verb (the infinitive inferre)  
**quā ex parte**: *for which reason*; “from which respect”
- 12 **bellandī**: *of waging war*; gerund, gen. sg. with the adj. cupidī which in turn modifies hominēs  
**Prō...prō**: *because of...*; “in proportion to” or “according to,” prō is causal in force
- 13 **sē habēre**: *that they had*; ind. discourse in secondary sequence: angustōs finēs is acc. d.o.
- 14 **milia passuum**: *miles*; “thousands of paces,” a mile is 1000 steps; subject of patēbant
- 16 **adductī...permōtī**: *Helvetians influenced... and moved*; the participles are nom. pl. agreeing with a missing subject  
**ea quae**: *those (things) which*; ea is object of comparāre and is translated as a demonstrative
- 17 **ea quae...pertinērent**: *those (things) which pertain*; relative clause of characteristic is often used to limit and characterize general antecedents (i.e. ea) and governs an impf. subj. in secondary sequence  
**ad proficiscendum**: *for setting out*; gerund (verbal noun) + ad expresses purpose  
**comparāre, coemere, facere, confirmāre**: complementary infinitives with cōstituērunt, supply the missing conjunction “et”
- 18 **quam maximum**: *as great...as possible*; quam + superlative is frequently translated “as X as possible,” here it modifies numerum  
**quam maximās**: see above, with sementēs  
**ut...suppeteret**: *so that...might suffice*; ut + impf. subj., purpose clause in secondary seq.  
**ad...conficiendās**: *for accomplishing...*; “for those things going to be accomplished” ad + gerundive (fut. pass. pple modifying rēs) often expresses purpose; when translating, employ a gerund-gerundive flip: translate as a gerund and eās rēs as the object of the gerund  
**biennium...esse**: *that...*; ind. discourse  
**sibi**: *for themselves*; dat. of interest/advantage
- 21 **in...annum**: *into the...*; i.e. “during,” 58 BC

### Translating Subjunctives

With the exception of purpose clauses (may, might) and conditional sentences (*if should, would; if were, would; if had, would have*; see pg. 19), almost all the subjunctive constructions that readers will encounter do not require a special translation in English. Readers should simply identify the tense (see verb synopses, pp. 74-81) and translate the subjunctive just as one would an indicative. Imperfect and pluperfect subjunctives are the most common tenses in secondary sequence.

3.3 Ad eās rēs conficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad 1  
 cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis filiō,  
 Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā  
 senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā  
 occupāret, quod pater ante habuerit; 4. itemque Dumnorigī Haeduō, fratrī 5  
 Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore principātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plebī  
 acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet eīque filiam suam in  
 matrimōnium dat. 5. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere,  
 proptereā quod ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: 6. nōn esse  
 dūbium quin tōtūs Galliae plūrimum Helvetiī possent; sē suīs copiīs suōque 10  
 exercitū illīs regna conciliātūrum cōfirmat. 7. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē  
 fidem et iusiūrandum dant et regnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac  
 firmissimōs populōs tōtūs Galliae sēsē potīrī posse sperant.

4.1 Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgē  
 ex vinculis causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut 15  
 ignī cremārētur.

2. Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iudicium omnem suam  
 familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs  
 obaeratōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit;  
 per eōs nē causam dīceret sē ēripuit. 3. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armis 20  
 iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs  
 cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; 4. neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvetiī  
 arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem conscīverit.

**addūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum:** draw/lead to, 4  
**amicus, -a, -um:** friendly, 1  
**ante:** before, in front of (acc); *adv.* before, 4  
**Casticus, -ī m.:** Casticus, 1  
**Catamantaloedis, -is m.:** Catamantaloedis, 1  
**cliens, -entis m.:** client, dependent, 4  
**conciliō (1):** win over, unite, 1  
**condūcō, -ere:** bring together, gather, 2  
**conficiō, -ere:** to exhaust, finish, 4  
**consciscō, -īre:** to resolve, decree; bring on oneself, 1  
**cremō (1):** burn, consumed by fire, 2  
**damnō (1):** condemn, punish, convict, 1  
**decem:** ten, 1  
**dēligō (1):** to tie down, fasten, 2  
**dictio, -ōnis m.:** pleading, saying; speech, 1  
**Diviciacus, -ī m.:** Diviciacus, 1  
**dubius, -a, -um:** doubtful, wavering, 1  
**Dumnorix, -īgis m.:** Dumnorix, 1  
**ēnūntiō (1):** announce, speak out, divulge, 1  
**ēripīō, -ere, -uī, reptus:** rescue, take from, 4  
**exsequor, sequī, secūtum:** follow/carry out 1

**factū:** to do (supine), 2  
**familia, -ae f.:** family, household, 1  
**fidēs, eī f.:** faith, honor, 4  
**filia, -iae f.:** daughter, 1  
**firmus, -a, -um:** strong, steadfast, 1  
**frāter, -tris m.:** brother, 2  
**Haeduus, -a, -um:** Haeduan, Aeduan, 1  
**ignis, ignis, m.:** fire, 4  
**indiciū, -iī n.:** information, evidence, 1  
**item:** also, likewise, in like manner, 3  
**iudiciū, -ī n.:** decision, judgment; trial 3  
**iūs, iūris n.:** justice, law, right, 2  
**ius-iūrandum, iūrisiūrāndī n.:** sworn oath, 2  
**lēgatio, -ōnis f.:** embassy, envoy, 2  
**magistratus, -ūs m.:** magistrate, officer, 3  
**mātrimōnium, -iī n.:** wedlock, marriage, 1  
**mortuus, -a, -um:** dead, 2  
**mōs, mōris m.:** custom, manner, law, 4  
**obaerātus, -a, -um:** indebted, 1  
**occupō (1):** seize, occupy, 4  
**oportet:** it is proper, fitting, necessary, 2

**pater, patris, m.:** father, 4  
**perfacilis, -e:** very easy; *adv.* very easily  
**perficiō, -ere:** complete, accomplish, 3  
**plebs, plēbis, f.:** common people, masses, 2  
**plūrimus, -a, -um:** most, very many, 4  
**poena, poenae, f.:** punishment, penalty, 3  
**potēns, -entis:** powerful, ruling (*gen.*), 2  
**potior, -īrī, -ītus:** gain, win (*abl.*), 2

**principātus, -ūs m.:** leadership, rule, 2  
**propterea:** on this account, therefore, 4  
**quīn:** nay (even), (but) that, 2  
**senātus, -ūs m.:** senate, council of elders, 1  
**sequor, -ī, secūtus:** follow, pursue, 4  
**suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** undertake, receive, 1  
**suspicio, -ciōnis f.:** mistrust, suspicion, 4  
**vinculum, -ī n.:** bond, chain, 2

1 **ad...conficiendās:** *for accomplishing...*; “for those things going to be accomplished” ad + gerundive (fut. pass. pple modifying *rēs*) often expresses purpose; when translating, employ a gerund-gerundive flip: translate as a gerund and *eās rēs* as the object of the gerund  
**sibi:** *for himself*; dat. of interest/advantage  
 2 **eō:** *this*; demonstrative pronoun  
**persuādet Casticō...ut:** *persuades Casticus... that*; verb governs dat. and ind. command  
 3 **cuius:** *whose*; gen. sg. relative pronoun  
**multōs annōs:** *for...*; acc. of duration  
 4 **appellātus erat:** *had been named*; + predicate nominative; the verb behaves as a linking verb  
**ut...occupāret:** *that he occupy*; ind. command with *persuādet* can often, but not always, be translated as an infinitive: “to occupy...”  
 5 **quod...habuerit:** pf. subj., relative clause of characteristic, the antecedent is *regnum Dumnorīgī Haeduō:* (*he persuades Dumnorix the Aeduan*); dat. i.o. of missing *persuādet* in a construction parallel to *Casticō* above  
 6 **eō tempore:** *at...*; abl. of time when  
**maximē...acceptus erat:** *had been especially (well) received*; governs a dative of agent (by...)  
 7 **ut...cōnārētur:** *that...*; ind. command governed by *persuādet*; impf. deponent *cōnārētur*  
**idem:** *the same thing*; id-dem, neuter acc. d.o., i.e. *ut...occupāret* in ll. 4-5  
**eī:** *to him*; dat. sg. indirect object with dat  
 8 **perfacile...esse...perficere:** *that it is...*; ind. disc. governed by *probat*; *perficere* is inf. subject and *perfacile* is the pred. adj.  
**factū:** *to do*; “in doing” abl. sg. supine (PPP stem + *ū*) is an abl. of respect qualifying the adj. *perfacile*, “very easy”  
**illīs:** *for those (men)*; dat. interest  
**conāta:** *the things attempted*; PPP, neuter pl.  
 9 **propterea quod:** *because*; lit. “on this account because” which is a pleonasm (redundancy)  
**ipse:** (*he*) *himself*; i.e. Orgetorix  
**obtentūrus esset:** *would attain*; “would be going to attain,” fut. pple + *sum* (here impf.

subj.) is a periphrastic fut. form; verbs in subordinate clauses in indirect disc. are very often placed in the subjunctive  
**nōn esse dūbium:** (*that*) *he did not doubt but that...*; “he was not doubtful,” ind. discourse  
 10 **plūrimum possent:** *would have very much power*; common idiom in Caesar, impf. subj.  
 11 **conciliātūrum (esse):** *that they will win over*; fut. infinitive; ind. disc., *sē* is acc. subj.  
 12 **ius-iurandum:** *a sworn oath*; as one or two words; both decline; gerundive *iurō*, -āre  
 13 **tōtius:** *of the entire*; gen. sg. with Galliae  
**sēsē:** *that they*; acc. subject of *posse*  
**potīrī:** *to possess*; dep. inf., *regnō* as abl. obj.  
 14 **Ea rēs:** *this matter*; i.e. Orgetorix’s conspiracy  
**est...ēnūntiāta:** *ēnūntiāta est*; pf. passive  
**per indicium:** i.e. through spies and informers  
**mōribus suīs:** *according to their customs*; “from their customs,” often with “ex” denotes a source of action (separation) not abl. cause  
 15 **causam dīcere:** *to plead (his) case*; idiom  
**damnātum...sequī:** *that (he) if condemned follow...*; deponent inf., PPP is conditional  
**oportēbat:** *it was necessary that*; impersonal  
**ut...cremārētur:** *that...*; ind. command  
**ignī:** ablative of means; i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. noun  
 17 **dīē cōstitūtā:** *on the...*; abl. of time when  
**causae dictionis:** *for the pleading of the case*  
**ad...mīlia decem:** *around*; ad means “up to” or “nearly” throughout this passage  
 18 **coēgit:** *gathered*; *cōgō* (co-agō) means (a) compel or (b) drive together; cf. ll. 15 and 22  
 19 **eōdem:** *in the same (place)*; abl. place where  
 20 **nē...diceret:** *so that...not*; neg. purpose. cf. 15  
**cum...cōnārētur...cōgerent:** *after...*; cum clause with two impf. subjunctives  
**exsequī:** pres. dep. infinitive, *exsequor*  
**ob eam rem:** *on account of this matter*  
 22 **mortuus est:** *died*; pf. deponent, *morior*  
**ut...:** *as*; common translate with indicative  
 23 **quin sibi...conscīverit:** *that he brought...on himself*; pf. subj. *consciscō*

5.1 Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōstituerant facere 1  
 cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. 2. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse  
 arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad  
 quadringentōs, reliqua p̄vāta aedificia incendunt; 3. frūmentum omne,  
 praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut domum redītīōnis spē 5  
 sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mensum molita  
 cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et  
 Latobrīgīs finitimīs utī, eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exustīs ūnā  
 cum eīs proficīscantur, Boiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum  
 Noricum transīerant Noreiamque oppugnābant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi 10  
 adsciscunt.

6.1 Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum  
 per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen  
 Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur, mōns autem altissimus  
 impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; 2. alterum per provinciam 15  
 nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter fīnēs  
 Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper p̄cātī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque  
 nōnnūllis locīs vadō trānsītur.

3. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus  
 Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel 20  
 persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur,  
 existimābant vel vī coactūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus  
 rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī  
 omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr. L. P̄sōne, A. Gabīniō  
 cōnsulibus. 25

**a(d)sciscō, -ere, -scīvī:** receive, admit, adopt, 1  
**aedificium, -ī n.:** building, edifice, 2  
**Allobrogēs, -um:** Allobroges, 3  
**angustus, -a, -um:** narrow, confined, 4  
**April, Aprilis m.:** April, 2  
**Boii, -ōrum m.:** Boians (Bohemia) 1  
**bonus, -a, -um:** good, kind(ly), useful 2  
**carrus, -ī m.:** wagon for baggage, wagon, 2  
**cibāria, -ōrum n.:** rations, rationed food, 1  
**combūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum:** burn up, 1  
**comparō (1):** prepare, get ready, provide, 4  
**cōnsul, -is m.:** consul, 3  
**d.:** diem; day, 1  
**difficilis, difficile:** hard, difficult, 1  
**domus, -ūs f.:** house, home, dwelling, 3  
**duodecim:** twelve, 1  
**efferō, -ferre, -tulī, ēlātus:** raise, lift up 4

**eō, īre, īvī:** to go, come, 4  
**exeō, -īre, -ī (īvī), -itus:** go out, 4  
**expeditus, -a, -um:** unimpeded, fast, 4  
**extrēmus, -a, -um:** farthest, outermost, 2  
**exūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum:** burn up, 1  
**fluō, -ere, fluxī, fluxus:** flow, 1  
**Gabinus, -ī m.:** Gabinius, 1  
**Genava, -ae f.:** Geneva, 3  
**iam:** now, already, soon, 4  
**impendeō, -ēre:** hang over, threaten, 1  
**incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus:** kindle, burn, 2  
**incolō, -ere, -uī:** inhabit, dwell on, 3  
**Iūra, -ae f.:** Iura (a mountain range), 3  
**Kal.:** Kalends, 1  
**L.:** Lucius, 2  
**Latobrīgī, -ōrum m.:** Latobrigians (Latovici) 1  
**mensis, -is m.:** month, 2

**molō, -ere, moluī, molitum:** grind (in a mill), mill, 1  
**mons, montis m.:** mountain, mount, 4  
**nondum:** not yet, 3  
**nōnnullus, -a, -um:** some, not none, 2  
**Noreia, -ae f.:** Noreia, 1  
**Noricum, -ī m.:** Noricum (modern Austria) 1  
**nūper:** recently, lately, newly, 1  
**omnīnō:** altogether, wholly, entirely, 2  
**oppidum, -ī n.:** town, 4  
**pācātus, -a, -um:** peaceful, quiet, 2  
**parō (1):** prepare, make ready, 3  
**patior, -ī, passus:** suffer, endure; allow, 2  
**perpaucī, -ae, -a:** very few, 1  
**Pisō, Pisōnis m.:** Piso, 2  
**pons, pontis m.:** a bridge, 2  
**portō (1):** carry, bear, bring, 2  
**praeter:** beyond, past (+ acc.), 2

**propterea:** on this account, therefore, 4  
**quadringenti:** four hundred, 2  
**Raurāci, -ōrum:** Rauraci, 1  
**reditiō, -ōnis f.:** return, going back, 1  
**rīpa, -ae f.:** bank, shore, 1  
**socius, -ī m.:** comrade, ally, companion, 2  
**subeō, -īre, -īi, -itum:** approach, undergo, 1  
**tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum:** destroy, raise, 2  
**trans:** over, across (+ acc.), 3  
**Tulingī, -ōrum m.:** Tulingi, 1  
**ubi:** where, when, 4  
**vadum, -ī n.:** shallow, shoal, ford, 2  
**vel:** or, **vel...vel,** either...or, 2  
**vīcus, -ī m.:** village, neighborhood, district, 2  
**vīs, vīs, f., pl. virēs:** force, power, violence, 4  
**vix:** with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 2

- 1 **eius:** *his*; i.e. Orgetorix, gen. sg.  
**nihilō minus:** *no less*; “less by nothing,” comp. adverb; nihilō is abl. degree of difference  
**id quod:** *that which*; id is object of *facere*  
2 **ut...exeant:** (*namely*) *that...*; pres. subj. *exeō*, in a noun purpose clause in apposition to id  
**ad eam rem:** *for this matter*; expresses purpose  
**sē:** *that they*; acc. subject of *parātōs esse*  
3 **arbitrāfī sunt:** pf. deponent  
**numerō:** *in number*; abl. of respect  
**ad:** *around*; “up to” or “nearly”  
5 **praeter quod:** *except (that) which...*  
**sēcum:** *cum sē*  
**portātūrī erant:** *were going to carry*; periphrastic fut. (fut. act. pple + impf. sum)  
**ut...essent:** *so that...*; result, impf. sum  
**spē sublātā:** *with hope having been carried off*; abl. absolute, pf. pass. pple from *tollō*  
6 **ad...subeunda:** *for approaching...*; “for all dangers going to be approached,” a gerundive *subeō* + *ad* expresses purpose and is best translated through a gerund-gerundive flip as a gerund + object: “for approaching all dangers”  
**molīta:** *ground*; i.e. flour, PPP “set in motion”  
8 **ūtī...proficiscantur:** *that...*; an alternative spelling for *ut* (note: the pres. inf. for *ūtō* is *ūtī* with an initial long-u); introducing an ind. command with pres. subj.  
**ūsī:** *having employed*; nom. pl. PPP, deponent *ūtō* governs an ablative object  
**ūnā:** *altogether*; adverb formed from an abl.  
10 **trānsierant:** pluperfect of *trāseō*  
**sōciōs:** (*as*) *allies*; in apposition to *Boiōsque*  
12 **erant:** *there were*

- itīnera:** *routes*  
**quibus...possent:** *by which...*; rel. clause of characteristic; impf. subj. of *possum*, *quibus* is a relative adj. with *itineribus*, which is redundant and may be left untranslated  
**domō:** *from home*; place from which  
**ūnum:** *one (route)*; in apposition to *itīnera*  
14 **quā:** *by which (way)*; or “where,” abl. as adv.  
**quā...dūcerentur:** relative clause of characteristic with impf. subjunctive, the path is so narrow that carts must pass one at a time  
15 **ut...possent:** *so that*; result clause, impf. subj.  
**facile:** *easily*; irregular 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. adv. *facilis*, -e  
**alterum (īter):** *the other (route)*; in apposition to *itīnera* (line 12) and parallel to “ūnum”  
16 **multō:** *much*; lit. “by much”, abl. degree of difference modifies comparative adjectives  
**facilius atque expeditius:** comparative adjs., neuter singular modifying “alterum (īter)”  
**propterea quod:** *because*; 3<sup>rd</sup> instance so far  
18 **vadō:** *in the shallows*; “in a ford”; place where  
20 **sēsē...persuāsūrōs (esse)...coactūrōs (esse):** *that they would persuade or compel*; fut. inf.  
21 **bonō animō:** *seemed not yet of good will to...*; abl. of quality in the predicative position  
22 **vī:** irregular ablative of means, *vīs*  
**paterentur:** *they (Allobrogēs) allow*; impf. subj. of the deponent *patior* (3<sup>rd</sup>-io)  
23 **diem dīcunt quā diē:** *they name the day on which (day)...*; ablative time when  
24 **a(nte) d(iem) V. Kal(ends) Apr(ilis):** *5th day before the Kalends of April*; March 28<sup>th</sup>, 58  
**L. Pisōne...cōsulibus:** abl. abs; add “being”

7.1 Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere 1  
 cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficiscī et quam maximīs potest itineribus in  
 Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. 2. Prōvinciae tōtī  
 quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā  
 ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindī. 5  
 3. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, legātōs ad eum mittunt  
 nobilīssimōs civitātis, cuius legātīōnis Nammeius et Verucloetius principem  
 locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per  
 prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre ut eius  
 voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium 10  
 consulem occīsū exercitūque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum  
 missum, cōncēdendum nōn putābat; 4. neque hōminēs inimicō animō, datā  
 facultāte per provinciam itineris faciendī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et  
 maleficiō existimābat. 5. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum mīlitēs  
 quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem se ad dēlīberandum 15  
 sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Id. April. reverterentur.

**April, Aprilis m.:** April, 2

**Cassius, -ī m.:** Cassius, 1

**concēdō, -ere:** go away, withdraw, yield, 2

**cōsul, -is m.:** consul, 3

**contendō, -ere, -ī, -ntus:** strive; hasten, 4

**dēlīberō (1):** consider, consult, weigh, 1

**Genava, -ae f.:** Geneva, 3

**impetrō (1):** to obtain, accomplish, 3

**inimīcus, -a, -um:** hostile, unfriendly, 4

**iniūria, -ae f.:** wrong, insult, injustice, 4

**intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum:** come or go

between, intervene, 1

**Idūs, -uum f.:** Ides (day of the month), 1

**iugum, -ī n.:** yoke, (mountain) range, 2

**L.:** Lucius, 2

**lēgātio, -ōnis f.:** embassy, envoy, 2

**maleficiū, -iī n.:** wrongdoing, crime, 2

**matūrō (1):** hasten; anticipate, ripen, 1

**memoria, -ae f.:** memory, 4

**Nammeius, -iī m.:** Nammeius, 1

**nōbilis, -e:** noble, renowned, 3

**nuntiō (1):** announce, report, 2

**occidō, -ere, occidī, occīsus:** kill, cut down 4

**omnīnō:** altogether, wholly, entirely, 2

**pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus:** drive, push, 2

**pons, pontis m.:** a bridge, 2

**princeps, -cipis m./f.:** chief, leader, 4

**proptereā:** on this account, therefore, 4

**putō (1):** to think, imagine, 3

**rescindō, -ere, scidī, scissum:** cut back, 1

**respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsum:** to answer, 3

**revertor, -ī, reversus sum:** to turn back, return, 2

**rogō (1):** to ask; tell, 2

**spatium, -iī n.:** space, room, extent, 4

**sumō, -ere, sumpsī, sumptum:** take, spend, 2

**temperō (1):** refrain from, keep from, 1

**ubi:** where, when, 4

**ulterior, -ius:** farther, 2

**urbs, urbis, f.:** city, 1

**Verucloētius, iī m.:** Verucloetius, 1

**voluntās, -tātis f.:** will, wish, choice, 2

- 1 **Caesarī**: *to Caesar*; Caesar talks about himself in the 3<sup>rd</sup> person; dat. sg. of *nūntiātum esset*  
**nūntiātum esset**: plpf. pass. subjunctive in a temporal clause with *cum*, “after” or “when”  
**id...eōs...cōnārī**: *this...(namely) that they attempt*; acc. subject and deponent inf. (indirect disc.) in apposition to *id*
- 2 **quam...itineribus**: *in as rapid marches as possible*; “with the greatest marches as it is possible,” *quam* + superlative is “as X as possible,” *potest* is impersonal: “it is possible”
- 3 **Gallia ulteriōrem**: *further Gaul*; i.e. the Province (Transalpine Gaul) in southern France  
**contendit**: *hastens*
- 4 **Prōvinciae tōtī...imperat**: *ordered from the entire Province...*; dat. indirect object; *tōtī* is dat. sg. of *tōtus* (gen. *tōtūs*)  
**quam...numerum**: *as great a number of soldiers possible*; “a greatest number of soldiers as it is able;” see line 2
- 4 **imperat...(et) pontem...iubet**: supply the missing conjunction “et,” *asyndeton*, which suggests that Caesar is quick and decisive
- 5 **ad Genavam**: *near Geneva*  
**rescindī**: present passive infinitive
- 6 **eius**: *his*; i.e. Caesar’s  
**certiōrēs factī sunt**: *were informed*; “were made more certain”, common idiom in Caesar, *certiōrēs* is a pred. nominative
- 7 **cuius legātiōnis**: *of which embassy*; rel. adj.
- 8 **quī dicerent**: *who would say...*; relative clause of purpose, impf. subj. *dīcō*, which one may translate as a regular purpose clause: “to say...”  
**sibi esse in animō**: *that he had in mind*; + inf., “there is to him in mind,” dat. of possession
- 9 **propterea quod**: *because*; lit. “on this account because,” 4<sup>th</sup> and final instance of this phrase  
**habērent**: *they had*; impf. subj., subordinate clauses within indirect discourse govern verbs in the subjunctive  
**rogāre ut...liceat**: *they asked that it be allowed...*; historical inf. and ind. command  
**eius voluntāte**: *with his permission*
- 10 **memoriā tenēbat**: *in memory*; abl. of means, a common idiom for “he recalled” or “he remembered”  
**L. Cassium...occīsum (esse), exercitumque ...pulsum (esse)...missum (esse)**: two separate instances of indirect discourses (two acc. subjects) governed by *tenēbat*, supply *esse* to form pf. passive infinitives
- 11 **occīsum (esse)**: *had been killed*; pf. pass. inf.  
**pulsum (esse)**: pf. pass. inf. *pellō*  
**sub iugum missum (esse)**: *had been sent under the yoke*; i.e. had been enslaved
- 12 **cōncēdendum nōn (esse sibi)**: *that he must not yield*; “that it is not going to be yielded by him,” a passive periphrastic (gerundive + form of *sum*) which expresses obligation or necessity, often with a dative of agent  
**hominēs...temperātūrōs (esse)**: *that people...would not refrain*; fut. inf. governed by *existimābat*  
**inimicō animō**: *of hostile intent*; abl. of description modifying *hominēs*  
**datā facultāte**: ablative absolute
- 13 **itineris faciendī**: *of making a journey*; “of a journey going to be made” gerundive modifies gen. iter which is better translated through a gerundive-gerund flip  
**ab inūriā...maleficiō**: *from...*; abl. separation with *temperātūrōs (esse)*
- 14 **ut spatium...posset**: *so that...*; purpose clause with impf. subj.; *spatium* is subject
- 15 **sē...sūmptūrum (esse)**: *that he...*; indirect discourse, supply *esse* for the future inf.  
**ad dēliberandum**: *for deliberating*; ad + gerund expressing purpose, which can also be translated as an infinitive: “to deliberate”
- 16 **quid**: *anything*; *aliquis, aliquid* is a common indefinite pronoun (anyone, anything), but *quis, quid* is commonly used as an indefinite (who → anyone; what → anything) after *sī, nisi, num, and nē*. The mnemonic for this construction is the jingle “After *sī, nisi, num, and nē*, all the *ali*’s go away” (in other words indefinite *aliquid* becomes just *quid*)  
**sī...vellent,...reverterentur**: *if they should wish, they could return...*; in direct disc. a future less vivid condition (*sī* pres. subj., pres. subj.) which are placed in impf. subjunctive in indirect discourse in secondary sequence  
**ad Id(ūs) April(is)**: *near the Ides of April*; the 13<sup>th</sup> of April, the Ides denotes the time of the month when there is a full moon; *Idūs* is 4<sup>th</sup> decl. acc. pl. and *Aprilis* is gen. sg.

### Numbers of Helvetians Killed During Caesar’s Campaign

In I.29 Caesar claims that 368,000 Helvetians and allies left Helvetia (only 92,000 were able to bear arms) and 110,000 returned. Therefore, 258,000 either fled or perished at Caesar’s hand.

24.1 At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et 1  
 ēssedariīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī consuērunt, reliquīs copiīs  
 subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. 2. Erat ob hās causās summa  
 difficultās, quod navēs propter magnitudinem nisi in altō cōstituī nōn  
 poterant, mīlitibus autem, ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravī 5  
 onere armōrum oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus desiliendum et in fluctibus  
 consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, 3. cum illī aut ex āridō aut  
 paulum in aquam progressī omnibus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissimīs locīs,  
 audacter tēla coicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. 4. Quibus rēbus nostrī  
 perterritī atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperitī, nōn eādē alacritāte 10  
 ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs consuerant utēbantur.

25.1 Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat  
 barbarīs inūsitiōr et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removērī ab  
 onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium constituī atque 15  
 inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs propellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs  
 magnō usuī nostrīs fuit. 2. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et  
 inusitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī constitērunt ac paulum modo  
 pedem rettulērunt.

**alacritās, -tātis f.:** eagerness, ardor, 1

**aperiō, -īre, -uī, -ertus:** open, disclose, 3

**aqua, -ae f.:** water, 1

**aridus, -a, -um:** dry, 3

**audacter:** boldly, 1

**consistō, -ere, -stītī:** to stand (still), stop 2

**dēsiliō, -īre, -luī:** to jump down, dismount, 4

**difficultās, -tātis f.:** trouble, difficulty, 1

**equus, -ī m.:** horse, 4

**ēssedārius, -ī m.:** charioteer, driver, 1

**expeditus, -a, -um:** unimpeded, fast, 4

**figūra, -ae f.:** form, shape, figure, 1

**fluctus, -ūs m.:** wave, billow, 2

**funda, ae f.:** sling, 3

**ignōtus, -a, -um:** unknown; obscure 1

**imperītus, a, um:** unskilled, inexperienced, 2

**impetītus, -a, -um:** hindered, impeded, 3

**inde:** from there, then, afterward, 3

**insuefactus, -a, -um:** accustomed, inured, 1

**inusitātus, -a, -um:** unusual, uncommon, 2

**latus, -eris n.:** side, flank, 3

**membrum, -ī n.:** limb, member, 1

**modo:** only, merely, simply; just now, 4

**mōtus, -ūs m.:** motion, 3

**nōtus, -a, -um:** known, familiar, famous, 2

**omnīnō:** altogether, wholly, entirely, 2

**onerārius, -a, -um:** freight (ship); 2

**onus, oneris n.:** burden, load, freight, 1

**opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum:** burden,  
overwhelm, 3

**pedester, -tris, -tre:** on foot, infantry, 1

**perterreō, -ēre, -terruī:** terrify thoroughly, 1

**praemittō, -ere:** send forward, send ahead, 2

**prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus:** step forward,  
go forth, advance, 2

**prōpellō, -ere, -pellī, -pulum:** drive forward  
or push away, 3

**referō, ferre, tulī, lātum:** report bring back 3

**removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus:** remove, 2

**remus, ī m.:** oar, 2

**sagitta, -ae f.:** arrow, 1

**simul:** at the same time (as); together, 4

**species, -ei f.:** sight, appearance, aspect, 1

**studium, -ī n.:** zeal, enthusiasm, pursuit, 3

**submoveō, -ēre, -mōvī:** move up; remove, 1

**tormentum, -ī n.:** missile-launcher, 3

**ubi:** where, when, 4

- 1 **cōnsiliō...cognitō**: abl. absolute  
**praemissō...ēssedariīs**: abl. absolute with two nouns; mobile troops were sent in advance
- 2 **quō...genere**: *which kind (of warfare)*; abl. obj. of *ūtī*, the deponent complementary inf. of *ūtōr*  
**reliquīs copiīs subsecūtī**: *having followed behind with the rest of the troops*; dep. pf. pple modifies *barbarī*, the cavalry went in advance and the foot-soldiers followed
- 3 **navibus**: *from...*; abl. of place from which  
**ēgredi**: *from disembarking*; “to step out,” dep. inf. *ēgredior*
- 4 **nisi in altō**: *except in the deep*; the Roman ships did not have flattened keels to come closer to the shore  
**cōstitūī**: *to be stopped*; pass. inf. with *poterant*
- 5 **militibus...oppressīs**: *the soldiers having been overcome...*; dat. of agent of pass. periphrastic, the dat. of agent is better translated as a subject intervening words are ablative of cause/means  
**gravī**: i-stem abl. sing. modifies *onere*
- 6 **et desiliendum (erat)...et consistendum (erat)...et pugnandum (erat)**: *(both) the soldiers had to...and had to...and had to...*; “it was going to be jumped down by soldiers...” passive periphrastic (gerundive + *sum*) with a dat. of agent expressing obligation or necessity; it is better translated in the active with the verb “must” or, as here, “had to” (see pg. 21)
- 7 **cum...coicerent...incitārent**: *when...*; temporal *cum*-clause with impf. subjunctive
- 8 **paulum**: *a little*; inner acc. or acc. of extent  
**prōgressī**: *having advanced*; pf. pple deponent
- omnibus...expeditīs**: abl. absolute  
**nōtissimīs locīs**: abl. absolute, supply “being”
- 9 **insuefactōs**: *experienced*; the horses are trained to run in water  
**quibus rēbus**: *by these matters*; “by which things,” abl. means or cause; Caesar often uses relative pronoun for transition where English employs a demonstrative  
**nostrī**: *our (men)*; as often
- 10 **huius generis pugnae**: gen. governed by the adjective *imperitī*, “unskilled in”  
**eādem...studiō**: abl. objects of *ūtēbantur*
- 11 **quō...consuerant**: *which...*; *quō* is an abl. object of the inf. *ūtī*  
**proeliīs**: *in battles*
- 12 **quod**: *this*; “which,” acc. obj. of *animadvertit*  
**nāvēs longās...constitūī**: acc. subj. and pass. infinitives governed by *iussit* below
- 13 **barbarīs**: *to the barbarians*; dat. of reference  
**inūsitātior**: nom. sg. comparative adj.
- 14 **paulum**: *a little*; inner acc. or acc. of extent  
**removērī**: pres. pass. inf.  
**cōstitūī**: *to be stopped*; pass. inf.
- 15 **propelli, submovērī**: pass. infinitives, *hostēs* is acc. subject
- 16 **magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit**: *served a great use to our men*; “was for a great use for our men,” double dative construction (*ūsū* is dat. of purpose, *nostrīs* is dat. of interest)
- 17 **paulum modo**: *just a little*; *modo* is adverbial, *paulum* is acc. of extent
- 18 **pedem**: *their step(s)*; i.e. they retreated  
**retulērunt**: 3<sup>rd</sup> pl. pf. referō

### Background to Caesar’s First Invasion of Britain on August 26, 55 BC

In IV.20 Caesar says that, although the winters were early (*matūrae*) in the north, he decided to go to Britain because he realized that assistance had been supplied from there (*inde subministrāta auxilia*) for the Gauls in almost every battle. Since Caesar knew very little about the region—its size (*magnitūdō*), inhabitants (*quantae nātiōnēs*), its practices in war (*ūsum bellī*), or its suitable ports (*idōneī portūs*)—he sent Gaius Volusenus in IV.21 as a scout to gather this information.

In the meantime, several states (*civitātēs*) of the Britons learned about his plan, sought out Caesar, and offered hostages as a show of loyalty. Caesar sent Commius, a loyal Gaul whom Caesar had placed as leader of the Atrebates and who had clout (*auctoritās*) over Gauls, back with the Britons. On the fifth day, Volusenus returned and reported what he had seen. In IV.22 after accepting hostages from the Gauls, Caesar placed the legates Q. Titurius Sabinus and L. Aurunculeius Cotta in charge of Roman forces in Gaul. Then he departed with 2 legions and about 80 transport ships.

In IV.23 Caesar set sail after midnight (*tertiā ferē vigiliā*) and around 10 a.m. (*hōrā diēi quārtā*) arrived in Britain. The Romans found themselves facing the sheer cliffs of Dover, and on top of all of the hills armed troops (*copiās armātās*) openly stood. Caesar now informed his legates about what Volusenus reported and sailed 7 miles up the coast to an open beach (*apertō ac plānō lītore*).

25.3 Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitudinem 1  
 maris, quī X legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, contestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī  
 feliciter ēvenīret, ‘Dēsilitē,’ inquit, ‘militēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus  
 prōdere; ego certe meum rēi pūblicaē atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.’  
 4. Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam 5  
 ferre coepit. 5. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus  
 admitterētur, universī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. 6. Hōs item ex proximīs primī  
 nāvibus cum conspēxissent, subsequūtī hostibus appropinquāverunt.

26.1 Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ordinēs 10  
 servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequī poterant atque alius  
 aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē aggregābat, magnopere  
 perturbābantur; 2. hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs  
 singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs conspēxerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs  
 adoriēbantur, 3. plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in  
 universōs tēla coniciēbant. 15

4. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārū nāvium, item  
 speculātōria navigia mīlitibus complērī iussit et, quōs laborantēs conspēxerat,  
 hīs subsidia submittēbat. 5. Nostrī, simul in aridō constitērunt, suīs omnibus  
 consecūtīs, in hostēs impetum fecērunt atque eōs in fūgam dedērunt; neque  
 longius prosequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere 20  
 non potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad pristīnam fortūnam Caesarī defuit.

**acriter:** sharply, fiercely, 2

**admittō, -ere, mīsī, missum:** admit, allow, 2

**adorior, -irī, -ortus sum:** rise up, attack, 2

**aggregō (1):** to crowd together, collect, 1

**altitudō, -inis f.:** height, depth, altitude, 2

**aperiō, -īre, -uī, -ertus:** open, disclose, 3

**appropinquō (1):** approach, draw near, 3

**aquila, -ae f.:** eagle, eagle standard, 4

**aridus, -a, -um:** dry, 3

**circumsistō, -ere, -stefī:** to surround, 2

**cohortor, -ārī, cohortātum:** urge on, incite 3

**consequor, -ī, secūtus:** follow after; pursue 1

**conspiciō, -ere, spexī, spectus:** see, behold 5

**contestor, -ārī, -ātum:** to call to witness, 1

**cunctor, -ārī, -ātum:** to delay, hesitate 1

**cursum, -ūs m.:** course, running, haste, 3

**dēdecus, -oris f.:** dishonor, disgrace, shame, 1

**dēsiliō, -īre, -luī:** to jump down, dismount, 4

**deus, -ī m.:** god, divinity, deity, 4

**ego:** I, 2

**equus, -ī m.:** horse, 4

**ēveniō, -īre, -iī, -itum:** come or turn out, 1

**fēliciter:** happily, favorably, 1

**firmiter:** firmly, steadfastly, 1

**fortūna, -ae f.:** fortune, chance, luck, 4

**fuga, -ae f.:** flight, haste, exile, speed, 3

**impeditus, -a, -um:** hindered, impeded, 3

**imperātor, -oris m.:** commander, leader, 2

**inquam:** say, 4

**insistō, -ere, -stifī:** set on, set about; stop, 2

**insula, -ae, f.:** island, 2

**item:** also, likewise, in like manner, 3

**labōrō (1):** work, toil, labor, strive, 2

**latus, -eris n.:** side, flank, 2

**litus, litoris n.:** coast, shore, beach, 1

**magnopere:** greatly, very much, 2

**mare, -is n.:** sea, 1

**meus, -a, -um:** my, mine, 1

**nāvigium, -ī n.:** vessel, sail, 1

**nōtus, -a, -um:** known, familiar, famous, 2

**occurrō, -ere:** run to meet, attack, 2

**officiū, -iī, n.:** duty, obligation, 3

**pauci, -ae, -a:** little, few, scanty, 4

**plūs (plūris):** more, 4

**pristinus, -a, -um:** former, previous, earlier 2

**prōdō, ere, didī, ditum:** bring forth; betray 2

**proiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum:** throw

forward, project, 2

**prosequor, sequi, secutum:** follow, pursue 1  
**quicumque, quae-, quod-:** whosoever, 4  
**scapha, -ae f.:** skiff, small boat, 1  
**servo (1):** save, keep, preserve, 2  
**simul:** at the same time (as); together, 4  
**singularis, -e:** single, 2  
**speculātōrius, -a, um:** of a look-out/scout, 1

**submittō, -ere, -misi:** send up, 1  
**ubi:** where, when, 4  
**universus, -a, -um:** all together, whole, 3  
**vadum, -i n.:** shallow, shoal, ford, 2  
**vērō:** in truth, truly, in fact, to be sure, 3  
**vōx, vōcis, f.:** voice; utterance, word, 4

- 1 **nostris...cunctantibus:** abl. abs., pres. pple  
 2 **quī...ferēbat:** (*the one*) who...; i.e. the standard bearer, subject of inquit  
**contestātus...ut:** *having implored the gods... that...;* ut + impf. subjunctive in ind. command  
 3 **desilite:** plural imperative  
**militēs:** vocative direct address  
**vultis:** 2<sup>nd</sup> pl. pres. volō  
**aquilam:** *the eagle (standard);* the golden eagle on the staff that represents the 10<sup>th</sup> legion. The behavior toward the military standard is similar to the loyalty shown to the American flag.  
 4 **meum...officium praestiterō:** *I will have performed my duty to;* + dat. compound, fut. pf.  
 5 **cum...dixisset:** *when he had...;* cum is an adverbial conjunction not a preposition  
**vōce magnā:** *with...;* abl. of manner is often without “cum” when the object is modified by an adjective, here magnā  
**sē:** *himself;* standard-bearer is the subject  
**ex navī:** ablative, i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> declension  
 6 **ferre:** infinitive ferō  
**nostrī:** *our (men);* nom. subject  
**conhortātī:** pf. dep. pple cohortor  
**inter sē:** *one another;* “among themselves”  
**ne...admitterētur:** *that... not;* negative ind. command, impf. subj. in secondary sequence  
 7 **Hōs..conspēxissent:** *when (the other soldiers) had caught sight of (them);* plpf. subjunctive  
 8 **subsecutī:** *having followed behind;* pf dep pple  
**pugnātum est:** *each (side) fought;* “it was fought,” impersonal pf. pass.  
 9 **Nostrī:** *our (men)*  
 10 **ordinēs servāre:** *to maintain their ranks*  
**subsequi:** *to follow behind;* deponent inf.  
**alius aliā ex navī:** *one from one ship...*  
*another from another ship;* common meaning with two uses of alius, -a, -um  
 11 **quibuscumque signis:** dat. of compound verb  
 12 **vērō:** *but indeed, but to be sure;* vērō is in an adversative clause; placed second in the sentence but first in English, it draws out a contrast between the Romans and the Britons  
**nōtis...vadīs:** ablative abs.  
 13 **egredientēs:** pres. act. pple  
 14 **plūrēs paucōs:** *More (Britons)... few (Romans);* juxtaposition, which heightens the contrast; plūrēs is nom. subj. of plūs  
**aliī:** (*and*) others...; asyndeton  
 16 **quod:** *this;* “which,” acc. obj. animadvertisset  
**nāvium:** i-stem gen. plural nāvis  
 17 **complēri:** pass. infinitive  
**quōs laborantēs conspēxerat:** *whom he had seen struggling;* “toiling,” against the enemy  
 18 **hīs:** *to these;* dat. i.o. or dat. with compound  
**Nostrī:** *Our (men)*  
 19 **suīs omnibus:** *all their (fellow soldiers)...*; an abl. absolute with consecūtis  
**in:** *against;* a common meaning in this context  
**in fūgam dedērunt:** *put them into flight;* “in fūgam dō” is a common idiom in Caesar  
 20 **longius:** *farther;* comparative adverb, longē  
**prosequi:** pres. deponent complementary inf.  
 21 **insulam capere:** *to land on the island;* “catch the island,” the horses had not disembarked yet because the ships were not close enough to the shore  
**ad pristīnam fortūnam:** (*compared*) *to his previous good fortune;* “in proportion to...” suggests a comparison  
 22 **Caesarī defuit:** *failed Caesar;* “was lacking to Caesar,” dat. of interest

### Supine

A supine is a verbal noun formed by adding **-ū** in ablative and **-um** in accusative to the 4<sup>th</sup> principle part stem. It is often translated as an ablative of respect (specification) and accusative expressing purpose:

factū: *in doing (to do)* (p. 6, 20)

frumentātum: *to get grain* (p. 20)

oppugnātum: *to assault* (p. 39)

rogātum: *to ask* (p. 52)

nocitum: *to be harmed* (p. 52)

27.1 Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fūgā recēpērunt, statim ad 1  
 Caesarem lēgātōs dē pace mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset sēsē  
 factūrōs pollicitī sunt. 2. Ūnā cum hīs legātīs Commius Atrēbās vēnit, quem  
 suprā demonstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. 3. Hunc illī ē  
 nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris mōdō Caesaris mandāta deferret, 5  
 comprehenderant atque in vincula coiēcērant; 4. tum proeliō factō  
 remīsērunt. In petendā pace eius rēi culpam in multitūdinem coiēcērunt  
 et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petivērunt.

5. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pacem ab  
 sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere <sē> imprudentiae dixit 10  
 obsidēsque imperāvit; 6. quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex  
 longinquiōribus locīs arcessitam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. 7. Intereā  
 suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenīre et sē  
 civitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

28.1 Hīs rēbus pāce confirmātā, post diem quartum quam est in Britāniam 15  
 ventum nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā demonstrātum est, quae equitēs  
 sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. 2. Quae cum  
 appropinquārent Britānniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō  
 coōrta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem unde erant  
 profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est prōpius 20  
 sōlis occāsum, magnō suī cum periculō deicerentur; 3. quae tamen, ancorīs  
 iactīs, cum fluctibus complērentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum  
 provectae continentem petiērunt.

**adversus, -a, -um:** opposite, in front, 2  
**ancora, -ae f.:** anchor, 3  
**appropinquō (1):** approach, draw near (dat.), 3  
**arcessō, -ere, -ivī, itum:** summon, send for, 1  
**Atrebas, Atrebātis, m.:** Atrebates, 3  
**coepī, coepisse, coeptum:** to begin, 9  
**commendō (1):** to commit, entrust, 1  
**Commius, -ī m.:** Commius, 2  
**compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum:** fill up, fill, 6  
**comprehendō, -ere, -dī:** seize, arrest; grasp 4  
**coōrior, -irī, coōrtus:** arise, break out, 2  
**culpa, -ae f.:** blame, fault; cause, 1  
**cursum, -ūs m.:** course, running, haste, 3  
**dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum:** cast down 2  
**fluctus, -ūs m.:** wave, billow, 2  
**fuga, -ae f.:** flight, haste, exile, speed, 3  
**iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum:** to throw, 4  
**ignoscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum:** pardon, forgive 2  
**imprudētia, -ae, f.:** lack of foresight, 2  
**inferus, -a, -um:** below, lower, 3  
**insula, -ae, f.:** island, 2

**intereā:** meanwhile, meantime, 3  
**lenis, -e:** smooth, slippery, 1  
**longinquus, -a, -um;** far, distant, remote, 2  
**mandō (1):** order, command, commit, 2  
**modus, ī n.:** manner, form; measure, 4  
**necessārius, -a, -um:** necessary, inevitable, 1  
**occāsus, -ūs m.:** fall, destruction, 2  
**ōrātor, -oris, m.:** speaker, pleader, 1  
**paucī, -ae, -a:** little, few, scanty, 4  
**polliceor, -cērī, -citus:** promise, offer, 2  
**portus, -ūs m.:** harbor, port, haven, 1  
**praemittō, -ere:** send forward, send ahead, 2  
**princeps, -cipis m./f.:** chief, leader, 4  
**proprius:** more closely, nearer, 3  
**prōvehō, -ere, -vexī, vectum:** carry forth, 1  
**quartus, -a, -um:** the fourth, 2  
**queror, querī, questum:** complain, lament, 1  
**referō, ferre, tulī, lātum:** report bring back 3  
**remigrō (1):** to travel back, wander back, 1  
**remittō, -ere, -mīsī:** send back, let go, relax, 4  
**simul:** at the same time (as); together, 4

**sōl, sōlis m.:** sun, 3  
**solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum:** loosen, set sail; pay, 1  
**statim:** immediately, at once, 4  
**sufferō, -ere, sustulī:** carry or hold up, bear 3  
**suprā:** above, over, on the top, 3

**tempestās, tempestātis f.:** storm, 3  
**ultrō:** voluntarily; moreover, beyond, 3  
**unde:** whence, from which source, 3  
**ventus, ventī m.:** wind, 3  
**vinculum, -ī n.:** bond, chain, 2

- 1 **proeliō:** *in battle*; abl of respect or place where  
**simul atque:** *as soon as...*  
**sē...recēperunt:** *they recovered*; “retreated”
- 2 **dē:** *about*  
**obsidēs:** acc. d.o. of datūrōs (esse)  
**sēsē:** *that they would*; reflexive as acc. subject of fut. infinitives datūrōs (esse) and factūrōs (esse) in secondary sequence  
**quaeque imperāset:** *and whatever he had ordered*; imperā(vi)ssēt is a syncopated plpf. subjunctive in a relative clause of characteristic, the missing antecedent is obj. of factūrōs (esse)  
**pollicitī sunt:** perfect deponent polliceor  
**ūnā:** *altogether, together*; ablative as adverb
- 3 **quem:** *whom...*; acc. subject of pf. passive inf. praemisum (esse) in ind. discourse with by demonstrāveram
- 4 **suprā demonstrāveram:** *I had shown above*; i.e. earlier in the narrative  
**illī:** *those (Britons)*; subject of comprehenderant
- 5 **orātōris mōdō:** *in the manner of a public speaker*; ablative of manner
- 6 **mandāta:** *the orders*; “things ordered” acc. d.o.  
**deferret:** *Commius carried*; impf. subj. deferō  
**coīcerant:** plpf. co(n)iciō, -ere  
**proeliō factō:** abl. absolute
- 7 **in petendā pace:** *in seeking peace*; “in peace going to be sought,” gerund-gerundive flip in which *pace* becomes acc. obj. of the gerund  
**eius rē:** *for this matter*; gen. of charge  
**coīcerunt:** pf. co(n)iciō, -ere
- 8 **ut ignōscerētur:** impf. subj., ind. command
- 9 **questus quod:** *having complained that...had waged*; intulisset is plpf. subj. for alleged cause  
**cum:** *after*  
**in continentem:** *to the continent*; i.e. continent of Europe, governed by missīs  
**petissent:** they had sought; plpf. subjunctive  
**ab sē:** *from him*; i.e. from Caesar, reflexive
- 8 **intulissent:** plpf. subj. inferō, alleged cause
- 10 **ignōscere <sē>:** *that he pardons*; + dat. obj.
- 11 **quōrum...partem...partem:** *part of which... (another) part...*; partitive gen.
- 12 **arcessitam:** *summoned*; modifies partem
- paucīs diēbus:** *within...*; abl. time within  
**sēsē:** *that they...*; emphatic reflexive, acc. subject of fut. inf. datūrōs (esse) in indirect discourse
- 13 **suōs:** *their own (men)*; object of iussērunt  
**in agrōs:** *to their fields, to their farms*
- 15 **Hīs rēbus:** abl. of means of cause  
**Pāce confirmātā:** abl. absolute  
**post diēm quartum quam...ventum:** *during the fourth day after they came to Britain*; “the fourth day later than it was come into Britain,” postquam as one word can be translated “after;” ventum est is an impersonal pf. passive which we translate in the active  
**nāvēs XVIII:** subject of solvērunt
- 16 **suprā demonstrātum est:** *it has been revealed above*; i.e. earlier in the narrative  
**quae..sustulerant:** *which had brought...*; modifies fem. pl. nāvēs, plpf. sufferō
- 17 **ex superiōre portū:** *from the upper harbor*  
**lēnī:** abl. sg. i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. adj. with ventō, the wind was not strong, so the ships holding the cavalry arrived later than the ships that had already come ashore  
**solvērunt:** *set sail*; “loosened”  
**quae cum:** *when these (ships)...*; “when which (ships),” we prefer a demonstrative here where Caesar uses a relative pronoun  
**Britānniae:** *to Britain*; dat. of compound verb
- 19 **coōrta est:** deponent perfect, coōrior  
**ut...posset:** *that...was able*; result clause  
**nūlla eārum:** the antecedents of the adj. and pronoun are the nāvēs (feminine, plural)  
**aliae...aliae:** *some (ships)...others*  
**eōdem:** *to the same place*; adverb  
**erant profectae:** plpf. deponent proficīscor
- 20 **proprius:** *nearer to* + acc.
- 21 **magnō suī periculō:** *with great risk for them*  
**quae tamen:** *these (ships) however*; “which”
- 22 **cum...complerētur:** *when...*; cum is adverbial not a preposition; flūctibus is abl. means  
**necessārīō:** *necessarily*; abl. as adverb  
**adversā nocte:** *in the face of the coming night*
- 24 **provectae:** PPP prōvehō

29.1 Eādem nocte accidit ut esset luna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs 1  
 maximōs in Ōceanō efficere consuēvit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. 2. Ita  
 ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum  
 curāverat, quāsque in aridum subdūxerat, aestus complēverat, et onerāriās,  
 quae ad ancorās erant deligātae, tempestās afflictabat, neque ūlla nostris 5  
 facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur.

3. Complūribus nāvibus fractīs, reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancorīs  
 reliquisque armamentīs amissīs ad navigandum inūtilēs, magna, id quod  
 necesse erat accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātio facta est. 4. Neque enim  
 nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent, et omnia dēerant quae ad 10  
 reficiendās nāvēs erant usuī, et, quod omnibus constābat hiemārī in Galliā  
 oportere, frumentum in hīs lōcīs in hiemem provīsum nōn erat.

30.1 Quibus rēbus cognitīs, principēs Britānniae, quī post proelium ad  
 Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocutī, cum equitēs et nāvēs et  
 frumentum Rōmānīs dēesse intellexerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex 15  
 castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiora quod sine  
 impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs transportāverat.

**adflictō (1):** agitate, knock about, 1  
**administrō (1):** to manage, direct; help, 3  
**aestus, -ūs f.:** tide, swell; heat, 2  
**āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** lose, let go, 2  
**ancora, -ae f.:** anchor, 3  
**angustus, -a, -um:** narrow, confined, 4  
**aridus, -a, -um:** dry, 3  
**armāmentum, -ī m.:** equipment, tackle, 1  
**auxilior, -ārī:** to help, assist, support, 1  
**clam:** secretly, in secret, 1s  
**coepī, coepisse, coeptum:** to begin, 9  
**colloquor, -quī, -locūtum:** to converse, 4  
**compleō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum:** fill up, fill, 6  
**confidō, -ere, confisus sum:** trust, believe, rely upon, 4  
**coniūrātio, -ōnis f.:** pact, union, conspiracy 3  
**constō, -āre, -stītī:** stand fixed; is agreed, 2  
**cūrō (1):** care for, attend to, manage, 1  
**dēdūcō, -ere:** to lead or draw down or away, 3  
**dēligō (1):** to tie down, fasten, 2  
**enim:** for, indeed, in truth, 3  
**exiguitās, -tātis, f.:** smallness, tininess, 1  
**frangō, -ere, frēgī, fractus:** break, 1  
**fūnis, -is m.:** a rope, cord  
**hiemo (1):** spend the winter, pass the winter, 3  
**hiems, hiemis f.:** winter, storm, 4  
**incognitus, -a, -um:** unknown, unexamined, 1  
**intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum:** to understand, 2  
**interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, clūsum:** close off, 1

**inūtilis, -e:** useless, unprofitable, 1  
**lūna, -ae f.:** moon, 1  
**maritimus, -a, -um:** maritime, marine, 1  
**nāvigō (1):** to sail, 2  
**necesse:** necessary; (it is) necessary, 4  
**nēmō, nullius, nēmīnī, -em, nullō:** no one, 3  
**Oceānus, ī m.:** Oceanus, 3  
**onerārius, -a, -um:** transport ship; 2  
**oportet:** it is proper, fitting, necessary, 2  
**optimus, -a, -um:** best, noblest, finest, 1  
**paucitās, -tātis f. (1):** fewness, scarcity, 3  
**paulātim:** gradually, little by little, 3  
**perturbātio, -tiōnis f.:** confusion, disorder, 1  
**plēnus, -a, -um:** full, full of, 1  
**postea:** thereafter, afterwards, 1  
**princeps, -cipis m./f.:** chief, leader, 4  
**prōducō, -ere, -dūxī, ductum:** lead forward 2  
**prōvideō, -ere, -vīdī, -visum:** to foresee, take  
 precautions, prepare for 3  
**rebellio, -lliōnis f.:** revolt, renewal of war, 1  
**reditus, -ūs m.:** a return, a coming back, 1  
**reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** restore, repair, 2  
**reportō (1):** to carry back, 1  
**rursus:** again, backward, back, 4  
**subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus:** draw up., 2  
**tempestās, tempestātis f.:** storm, 3  
**transportō (1):** carry over, take across, 3

- 1 **Eādem nocte** *on...*; abl. of time when  
**accidit ut**: *it happened that...*; noun result  
 clause commonly follows impersonal *accidit*  
**esset**: *there was*; impf. subj. sum  
**quī diēs**: *which time...*; “which day,” rel. adj.  
**aestūs maximōs**: calculated to be August 30,  
 55 BC thus dating the entire expedition
- 2 **nostrīs**: *to our (men)*; dat. of interest
- 3 **ūnō tempore**: abl. of time when  
**et longās nāvēs....et onerāriās (nāvēs)**: *both  
 the long ships and the freight (ships)*  
**quibus**: abl. of means, relative pronoun  
**transportandum (esse)**: *that...was to be  
 transported*; “was going to be transported”  
 passive periphrastic (gerundive + missing inf.  
 of sum) express obligation or necessity;  
*exercitum* is acc. subject of this infinitive in  
 indirect discourse
- 4 **subdūxerat**: *drew up*; as a prefix sub- often  
 means “up from under” or just “up”
- 5 **nostrīs**: *to our (men)*; dat. of indirect object
- 6 **administrandī aut auxiliandī**: gen. sg.  
 gerunds (verbal nouns), translate in English  
 with -ing, modifying the subject *facultās*
- 7 **complūribus...fractīs**: abl. absolute  
**reliquae cum essent...inūtilēs**: *since the  
 remaining (ships) were...*; causal; impf. subj.
- 8 **ad navigandum**: *for...*; ad + gerund expresses  
 purpose, here qualifying *inūtilēs*
- 7 **magna**: modifies fem. sg. *perturbātiō* below  
**id quod**: *that which...*; apposition to *perturbātiō*
- 9 **tōtius exercitūs**: subjective gen. sg.
- 10 **possent**: *they might be able*; impf. subj. in a  
 relative clause of purpose  
**dēerant**: impf. *dēsūm*  
**ad reficiendās nāvēs**: *for repairing...*; ad +  
 noun + gerundive expressing purpose; employ  
 a gerund-gerundive flip in the translation
- 11 **erant usūi**: *were of use*; dative of purpose  
**constābat**: *it was agreed to all to...*; “stood  
 fixed” + *oportere*, Caesar had planned to  
 spend the winter in Gaul, so he brought  
 insufficient amount of grain to Britain
- 12 **in hiemem**: *(well) into the winter*
- 13 **quibus rēbus**: *these things...*; abl. abs.  
**inter sē**: *to one another*; “among themselves”  
**Rōmānīs dēesse**: *were falling short for the  
 Romans*; dat. of interest, inf. *dēsūm*
- 16 **quae...erant angustiora**: *which was...*;  
 neut. pl. *castra* is the antecedent  
**hōc...quod**: *because of this...(namely)  
 because,*” abl. of cause

### Popular Uses of Subjunctive in Caesar

Practical Note: identify and translate most subjunctives in the tense you find them.

	How to identify	special translation	example
1. Purpose, adverbial or relative	<i>ut/nē</i> (neg.)	may/might	<i>ut Caesar mitteret so that Caesar might send</i>
2. Result, adverbial or noun clause	<i>ut/ut nōn</i> (neg.)	none	<i>ut Caesar mitteret that Caesar sent</i>
3. Cum-Clauses	<i>Cum</i> + subjunctive	none	<i>Cum Caesar mitteret When Caesar sent</i>
4. Indirect Question	interrogatives: e.g. <i>quis, cūr</i>	none	<i>nōvit quōs Caesar mitteret he learned whom Caesar sent</i>
5. Indirect Command	commanding verb + <i>ut/nē</i> (neg.)	none	<i>persuāsit ut Caesar mitteret he persuaded that Caesar sent</i>
6. Relative Clause of Characteristic	relatives: <i>quī, quod</i> + subj.	none	<i>eōs quōs Caesar mitteret those whom Caesar sent</i>
7. Verb in Subordinate Clause in Ind. Disc.	any subordinate verb in an acc. + inf. construction	none	<i>eōs, sī id mitteret, lēgere that they read it, if he sent it</i>
8. Future-Less-Vivid	<i>sī</i> pres. subj., pres. subj.	should/would	<i>sī sit, mittat if he should be...he would send</i>
9. Pres. Contrafactual	<i>sī</i> impf. subj., impf. subj.	were/would	<i>sī esset, mitteret if he were...he would send</i>
10. Past Contrafactual	<i>sī</i> plpf. subj., plpf. subj.	had/would have	<i>sī fuisset, mīssisset if he had been...he would have</i>

30.2. optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebelliōne factā frūmentō commeātūque 1  
nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem producere, quod eīs superātīs aut redītū  
interclusīs nēminem postea bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam transitūrum  
cōfidēbant. 3. Itaque rursus coniurātiōne factā paulātīm ex castrīs discedere  
et suōs clam ex agrīs dēducere coepērunt. 5

31.1 At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex  
ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō quod obsidēs dare intermiserant fore id quod  
accidit suspicābātur. 2. Itaque ad omnēs casūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et  
frūmentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra conferēbat et, quae gravissimē afflictatae  
erant nāvēs, eārum materiā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et quae 10  
ad eās rēs erant usuī ex continentī comportārī iubēbat. 3. Itaque, cum summō  
studiō ā mīlitibus administrāretur, XII nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut navigārī  
satis commodē posset effēcit.

32.1 Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex consuetūdine ūnā frumentātum missā,  
quae appellābātur VII., neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpōsitā, 15  
cum pars hominum in agrīs remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, eī quī  
prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī nuntiāvērunt pulverem  
maiōrem quam consuetūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter  
fēcisset.

**afflictō (1):** damage, agitate, knock about, 1  
**administrō (1):** to manage, direct; help, 3  
**aes, aeris n.:** bronze, copper, 2  
**āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** lose, let go, 2  
**clam:** secretly, in secret, 1  
**coepī, coepisse, coeptum:** to begin, 9  
**commeātus, -ūs m.:** convoy, traffic, trip, 1  
**commodus, -a, -um:** convenient, suitable, 2  
**comparō (1):** prepare, get ready, provide, 4  
**comportō (1):** carry together, collect, 3  
**conferō, -ferre:** bring together, gather, 1  
**confidō, -ere, confisus sum:** trust, believe, rely upon, 4  
**coniurātiō, -ōnis f.:** pact, union, conspiracy 3  
**conlocō (1):** place, settle, arrange, 1  
**cotidiē:** daily, every day, 1  
**dēducō, -ere:** lead or draw down or away, 3  
**ēventus, -ūs m.:** outcome, consequence, result, 2  
**factū:** to do (supine), 2  
**frūmentor, -ārī:** to forage, fetch corn, 1  
**hiems, hiemis f.:** winter, storm, 4  
**intercludō, -ere, -clūsī, clūsum:** close off, 1  
**interpōnō, -ere, -posuī:** include, introduce, 2  
**materia, -ae f.:** timber, wood, material, 2  
**nāvigō (1):** to sail, 2

**nēmō, nullius, nēminī, -em, nullō:** no one, 3  
**nōndum:** not yet, 3  
**nuntiō (1):** announce, report, 2  
**optimus, -a, -um:** best, noblest, finest, 1  
**paucitās, -tātis f. (1):** fewness, scarcity, 3  
**paulātīm:** gradually, little by little, 3  
**porta, -ae f.:** gate, entrance, 1  
**postea:** thereafter, afterwards, 1  
**princeps, -cipis m./f.:** chief, leader, 4  
**prōducō, -ere, -duxī, ductum:** lead forth, 2  
**pulvis, pulveris m.:** dust, dirt, 1  
**rebellio, -lliōnis f.:** revolt, renewal of war, 1  
**reditus, -ūs m.:** a return, a coming back, 1  
**reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** restore, repair, 2  
**remaneō, ēre, mansī, mansum:** remain, 1  
**rursus:** again, backward, back, 4  
**satis:** enough, sufficient, 2  
**statio, statiōnis f.:** post, station, anchorage, 3  
**studium, -ī n.:** zeal, enthusiasm, pursuit, 3  
**suspicio, -ciōnis f.:** mistrust, suspicion, 4  
**suspīcor, -ārī, suspīcātum:** to suspect, 3  
**transportō (1):** carry over, take across, 3  
**ventitō (1):** to come often, resort to, 2

- 1 **optimum esse**: *that it was best*; ind. discourse, the subject is prohibēre and producere  
**factū**: *in fact*; supine (verbal noun), abl. respect  
**dūxērunt**: *they considered*; “they calculated”  
**rebelliōne factā**: abl. absolute  
**frumentō commeātūque**: *from...;* abl. of separation governed prohibēre
- 2 **nostrōs** *our (men)*  
**producere** *to prolong, to draw out*  
**eīs...interclusīs**: abl. absolute; eīs = hīs  
**reditū**: *from a return*; abl. separation
- 3 **nēminem**: *no one*; acc. subject from nēmō  
**bellī inferendī causā**: *for the sake of waging...;* causā behaves as a preposition with a preceding gen.; here a gerundive which we translate with the gerundive-gerund flip  
**transitūrum (esse)**: fut. inf. transeō with acc. subject nēminem
- 5 **suōs**: *their (men)*; i.e. the Britons, obj. of dēducere
- 6 **et...et**: *both...and*
- 7 **ex eō quod**: *from the fact that*; “from this (fact) because,” eō is a demonstrative  
**dare intermiserant**: *had ceased to give...*  
**fore...accidit**: *that it would be that which happened*; ind. discourse, fore is equivalent to futūrum esse, the fut. inf. of sum, governed by suspicābātur
- 8 **ad omnēs casūs**: *for...;* expressing purpose  
**et...et**: *both...and*;
- 9 **quae...nāvēs, earum...aere**: *the timber and bronze of those (ships), which ships...;* the relative clause precedes the antecedent *eārum, materīa* atque *aere* are abl. object of impf. ūtor
- 10 **ad...reficiendās**: *for...;* ad + gerundive again expressing purpose, readers should employ the gerundive-gerund flip, and translate the verb form as a gerund with an acc. object  
**reliquās (nāvēs)**: *the rest (of the ships)*
- 11 **quae...usuī**: *the (things) which were of use...;* usuī is dative of purpose, cf. 29.4  
**ad eās rēs**: *for...;* ad + acc expressing purpose  
**continentī**: 3<sup>rd</sup> declension i-stem abl. sg.
- 12 **summō studiō**: abl. of manner with adjective does not require “cum;” this cum begins a causal cum-clause (since) with administrārētur  
**administrārētur**: *it was managed*; impf. subj.  
**reliquīs ut...effēcit**: *he brought it about that that the remaining ships were able to be sailed conveniently enough*; a noun result clause after effēcit, “brought it about”
- 14 **ex consuetūdine**: *according to custom*; abl. of source; the adj. ūnā modifies legiōne  
**frumentātum**: *to get grain*; supine, acc. usually expresses purpose
- 15 **VII**: *the 7<sup>th</sup> (legion)*; predicate nominative  
**ūllā...suspiciōne interpōsitā**: abl. absolute
- 16 **cum pars hominum...pars**: *while some of the men...(and) others...;* asyndeton  
**ventitāret**: *kept coming*; impf. subj. with cum, frequentative form of veniō  
**eī quī...**: *those who...*
- 17 **pulverem...vidērī**: *that...;* indirect discourse, pulverem is acc. subj.  
**pulverem maiōrem quam**: *more dust than...;* comparative
- 18 **ferret**: impf. subj., verbs in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse are subjunctive  
**in eā parte**: *in that direction*  
**quam in partem**: *into which direction*; in quam partem
- 19 **fēcisset**: plpf. subj., relative cl. of characteristic

### Gerundives

A gerundive, a future passive participle (stem + nd + 1<sup>st</sup> & 2<sup>nd</sup> decl. endings) agrees with a noun in case, number, and gender. Though it can be translated many ways: “going/about/worthy to be freed” or “to be freed,” we often employ a gerund-gerundive flip and translate it as a gerund:

Genitive	<u>suī liberandī</u>	<i>for freeing themselves</i>	
	<u>bellī inferendī</u> causā	<i>for the sake of waging war</i>	gen. + causā expresses purpose
Accusative	ad <u>nāvēs reficiendās</u>	<i>for repairing ships</i>	ad + gerundive expresses purpose
Ablative	in <u>petendā pāce</u>	<i>in seeking peace</i>	

**Passive Periphrastic (gerundive + sum )** expresses obligation or necessity and governs a dative of agent. Translate it with “must” or “has to” or “ought” in the present and “had to” in the past.

<u>faciendum</u> esset	<i>it had to be done</i>	in subjunctive
sibi iter <u>faciendum</u> esse	<i>that a journey must be made by him</i>	in ind. discourse

32.2 Caesar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliquid nōvī ā barbarīs inītum consilii, 1  
cohortēs quae in statiōne erant sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs  
duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et confestim sēsē subsequī iussit.

3. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs processisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque 5  
aegrē sustinēre et, cōnfertā legiōne, ex omnibus partibus tēla coīcī  
animadvertit. 4. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs partibus demessō frūmentō pars  
ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs  
delituerant; 5. tum dispersōs depōsitīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō  
adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ordinibus perturbāverant, simul  
equitātū atque ēssedīs circumdederant. 10

33.1 Genus hoc est ex ēssedīs pugnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant  
et tēla coīciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs  
plērumque perturbant et, cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāverunt, ex  
ēssedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. 2. Aurigae interim paulātim ex proeliō  
excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant ut, sī illī ā multitudine hostium 15  
premanur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. 3. Ita mobilitātem  
equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant, ac tantum ūsū  
cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in declivī ac praecipitī lōcō incitātōs  
equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per temonem percurrere et in  
iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere consuerint. 20

**adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum:** rise up, attack, 2  
**aeger, -gra, -grum:** sick, weary, 4  
**armō (1):** to arm, 1  
**auriga, ae m.:** charioteer, driver, 1  
**brevis, -e:** short, 3  
**circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datus:** surround, 1  
**citus, -a, -um:** swift, quick, 1  
**confertus, a, um:** crowded together, dense, 3  
**cōnfestim:** immediately, 4  
**conlocō (1):** place, settle, arrange, 1  
**cotidiānus, -a, -um:** daily, of every day, 3  
**currus, -ūs m.:** chariot, cart, 2  
**dēclivis, -e:** sloping, inclined downwards, 1  
**dēlitescō, -ere, -tuī:** conceal oneself, lie hid 1  
**dēmetō, -ere, messuī, messum:** reap, mow 1  
**dēponō, -ere, -posuī, -positum:** put down, 1  
**dēsiliō, -ire, -luī:** to jump down, dismount, 4  
**dispergō, -ere, -spersī, spersum:** scatter, 1  
**equus, -ī m.:** horse, 4  
**ēssedum, -ī n.:** war-chariot (Gallic word), 3  
**excēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum:** go out, 3  
**exercitatio, -iōnis f.:** training, practice, 2  
**expeditus, -a, -um:** unimpeded, fast, 4  
**flectō, -ere, flexī, flectum:** turn, bend, 1  
**hūc:** to this place, hither, here 2

**incertus, -a, -um:** unreliable, doubtful, 2  
**inde:** from there, then, afterward, 3  
**ineō, -ire, ī, -itum:** go into, enter, 1  
**insinuō (1):** to insinuate, wind a way in, 1  
**insistō, -ere, -stīfī:** set on, set about; stop, 2  
**iugum, -ī n.:** yoke, (mountain) range, 2  
**metō, ere, messuī, messum:** reap, harvest, 1  
**mobilitās, -tātis f.:** mobility, 1  
**moderor, -ārī, -ātum:** restrain, regulate, 1  
**noctū:** by night; abl. as adv. nox, noctis, 4  
**noscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum:** to learn, 1  
**occupō (1):** seize, occupy, 4  
**paucī, -ae, -a:** little, few, scanty, 4  
**paulātim:** little by little, gradually, 3  
**pedes, peditis m.:** foot soldier, infantry; *adj.* on foot, 1  
**percurrō, -ere, -cucurrī:** run through, 1  
**perequitō (1):** to ride (a horse) through, 1  
**praeceps, praecipitis adj.:** headlong; steep, 1  
**prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum:** proceed, 3  
**proelior, -ārī:** to give battle, fight, 1  
**rōta, -ae f.:** wheel, 1  
**silva, -ae f.:** wood, forest, woodland, 4  
**simul:** at the same time (as); together, 4  
**stabilitās, -tātis f.:** stability, firmness, 1  
**statio, statiōnis f.:** post, station, anchorage, 3

**strepitus, -ūs m.:** creaking, rustling, rushing, 1  
**succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus:** go up,  
 approach, 2  
**suspīcor, -ārī, suspīcātum:** to suspect, 3

**tēmō, -ōnis m.:** pole, beam (of a wagon), 1  
**terror, terroris m.:** terror, fear, 1  
**turma, -ae f.:** troop of cavalry (30 men), 1

- 1 **id, quod erat:** *that which was (the case)*  
**aliquid nōvī...cōsiliī:** (*namely that*) *some new plan*; partitive gen., aliquid is acc. subj. of inītum (esse),  
**inītum (esse):** *had been initiated*; pf. pass. ineō
- 2 **cohōrtēs...duās...reliquās...iussit:** *ordered the cohorts to...two (cohorts) to... the remaining (cohorts) to...;* acc. object of iussit  
**in eam partem:** *into that direction*  
**ex reliquīs:** *from the remaining (cohorts)*
- 3 **armārī:** *to arm themselves*; “to be armed”  
**subsequī:** present deponent inf.
- 4 **paulō longius:** *a little farther*; abl. of degree of difference with comparative adverb  
**processisset:** plpf. subjunctive  
**suōs:** *that his (soldiers)*; acc. subj. of pass. inf. premī, sustinēre and pass. inf. coīcī in an ind. discourse governed by animadvertit
- 5 **partibus:** *directions*  
**coīcī:** pass. inf. coīciō, -ere
- 6 **omnī...demessō frūmentō:** abl. abs., omnī is i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. adj. modifying frūmentō
- 7 **ūna, reliqua:** pars is feminine in gender  
**suspīcātī hostēs:** *the enemy having suspected that...;* hostēs is nom. subj. of delituerant  
**nostrōs:** *that our (men)*; acc. subj.  
**esse ventūrōs:** ventūrōs esse; fut. inf. veniō
- 8 **dispersōs...occupātōs:** (*our soldiers*) *dispersed...and occupied*; acc. d.o. of adortī  
**adortī:** (*the enemy*) *having attacked...*  
**depōsitīs armīs:** abl. absolute; the men put down their weapons to gather food
- metendō:** *harvesting*; gerund of meteō
- 9 **paucīs interfectīs:** abl. absolute  
**incertīs ōrdinibus:** *in unfixed ranks*
- 11 **pugnae:** *of fighting*; modifies genus  
**prīmō:** *at first*; abl. time when  
**partēs:** *directions*
- 13 **cum...insinuāverunt:** *when...;* + indicative, cum is adverbial not a prep.; sē is acc. d.o.
- 14 **pedibus:** *on foot*; “by feet,” abl. of manner  
**Aurigae:** *drivers*; the drivers carried soldiers to battle, waited at a safe distance, and then returned to pick up soldiers when summoned
- 15 **ita...ut:** *in such a way...that*; introducing a result clause, pres. subj. in primary sequence
- 16 **expeditum...receptum:** *an easy recovery for their (people)*; “an unencumbered recovery”
- 17 **tantum:** *only*; adverb
- 18 **efficiunt utī...consuerint:** *they bring it about that they have become accustomed...;* noun result clause, utī is another form for ut (ūtī is inf. of ūtor) and consuerint is perfect subj.
- 19 **sustinere:** *to restrain*; “hold up”  
**brevī (tempore):** *in a short (time)*; time when  
**per temōnem...in iugō:** The Britons ran out from the chariot onto the wooden pole (tēmō) attached between the two horses to the chariot. Then they stood on the harness (iugum) binding the horses together
- 22 **sē...recipere:** *retreat*; a common idiom, “take themselves back”  
**citissimē:** superlative adverb

#### Indirect Discourse: Accusative Subject + Infinitive

In secondary sequence, translate a present infinitive as imperfect, perfect as pluperfect, and “will” as “would.”

Present	Caesarem mīlitēs <b>mittere</b> ( <i>says</i> ) <i>that Caesar is sending soldiers</i> ( <i>said</i> ) <i>that Caesar was sending soldiers</i>	mīlitēs ā Caesar <b>mittī</b> ( <i>says</i> ) <i>that the soldiers are sent by Caesar</i> ( <i>says</i> ) <i>that the soldiers were sent by Caesar</i>
Perfect	Caesarem mīlitēs <b>mīsisse</b> ( <i>says</i> ) <i>that Caesar has sent* soldiers</i> ( <i>said</i> ) <i>that Caesar had sent soldiers</i>	mīlitēs ā Caesar <b>mīssōs esse</b> ( <i>says</i> ) <i>that the soldiers has been sent* by C.</i> ( <i>said</i> ) <i>that the soldiers had been sent by C.</i>
Future	Caesarem mīlitēs <b>missūrum esse</b> ( <i>says</i> ) <i>that Caesar will send soldiers</i> ( <i>said</i> ) <i>that Caesar would send soldiers</i>	<i>*alternatives: sent, were sent</i>

34.1 Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitate pugnae tempore 1  
 opportunissimō Caesar auxilium tulit: namque eius adventū hostēs  
 constitērunt, nostrī sē ex timore recepērunt. 2. Quō factō, ad lacessendum  
 hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē  
 locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. 3. Dum 5  
 haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs quī erant in agrīs reliquī  
 discessērunt. 4. Secutae sunt continuōs complurēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et  
 nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent.

5. Interim barbarī nuntiōs in omnēs partēs dimīsērunt paucitātemque  
 nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt et quanta praedae faciendae atque in 10  
 perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent,  
 demonstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitudine peditātūs  
 equitātūsque coactā ad castra vēnērunt.

35.1 Caesar, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, sī  
 essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs 15  
 circiter XXX, quōs Commius Atrēbās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum  
 transportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs constituit. 2. Commissō proeliō  
 diutius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre non potuērunt ac terga  
 vertērunt. 3. Quōs tantō spatiō secutī quantum cursū et vīribus efficere  
 potuērunt, complūrēs ex eīs occidērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque 20  
 aedificiīs incensīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

36.1 Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pace vēnērunt.

**ācer, ācris, ācre:** sharp, fierce, eager, bitter 2  
**aciēs, -eī f.:** sharp edge, battle line, army, 2  
**aedificium, -iī n.:** building, edifice, 2  
**alienus, -a, -um:** of another, foreign, 2  
**ante:** before, in front of (acc); *adv.* before, 4  
**Atrebas, Atrēbātis, m.:** Atrebatas, 3  
**auxilium, -iī n.:** help, aid, assistance, 3  
**brevis, -e:** short, 3  
**committō, -ere:** commence, commit, entrust 4  
**Commius, -iī m.:** Commius, 2  
**continuus, -a, -um:** continuous, unceasing, 1  
**cursus, -ūs m.:** course, running, haste, 3  
**deinde:** then, next, from that place, 1  
**dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus:** send (away), 3  
**diū:** a long time, long, 1  
**effugiō, -ere, -fūgī:** flee out, escape, 1  
**expellō, -ere, pulī, pulsum:** drive out, expel 2  
**incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus:** kindle, burn, 2  
**lacessō, -ere, -ivī:** provoke, goad, irritate, 1  
**latē:** widely, far and wide, 2  
**liberō (1):** free, liberate, 3

**namque:** to be sure, for, 1  
**nanciscor, nanciscī, nactus:** obtain, meet, 1  
**novitās, -tātis f.:** newness, strangeness, 1  
**occidō, -ere, occidī, occisus:** kill, cut down 4  
**occupō (1):** seize, occupy, 4  
**opportūnus, -a, -um:** fit, suitable, useful, 2  
**paucitās, -tātis f. (1):** fewness, scarcity, 3  
**peditātus, -ūs m.:** infantry, 3  
**pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus:** drive, push, 2  
**perpetuus, -a, -um:** constant, everlasting, 4  
**praeda, -ae f.:** loot, spoils, cattle, 2  
**praedicō (1):** proclaim, publish, declare, 2  
**redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus:** to bring back, 3  
**sequor, -ī, secūtus:** follow, pursue, 4  
**spatium, -iī n.:** space, room, extent, 4  
**tempestās, tempestātis f.:** storm, 3  
**tergum, -iī n.:** back, hide, rear, 1  
**timor, -oris m.:** fear, dread, anxiety, 2  
**transportō (1):** carry over, take across, 3  
**vertō, -ere, -sī, -rsus:** turn, change, 1  
**vīs, vīs, f., pl. virēs:** force, power, violence, 4

- 1 **quibus rēbus:** *because of these things*; “which things,” abl. of cause  
**perturbātis nostris:** *our (men) having been set into confusion*; abl. abs.  
**novitate pugnae:** abl. of means with *perturbātis*  
**tempore opportunissimō:** abl. of time when
- 2 **tulit:** perfect, ferō  
**hostēs:** nom. subject
- 3 **constitērunt:** *stopped*; “stood still”  
**sē...recēpērunt:** *retreated*; idiom  
**quō factō:** *this having been done*; “which having been done,” abl. abs.  
**ad...aliēnum esse tempus:** *that it was an unfavorable time...*; ind. discourse governed by perfect deponent pple *arbitratus*  
**ad lacessendum...commitendum:** *for provoking...*; ad + gerundives: in a gerund-gerundive flip: the gerundives should be translated as gerunds (-ing) with acc. objs.
- 4 **suō sē locō continuit:** *he held his ground*; “held himself in his position”
- 6 **quī erant...reliquī:** *(those) who...*; the antecedent is subject of *discessērunt*
- 7 **secūtae sunt:** pf. deponent, subject *tempestātēs*  
**continuōs...diēs:** *for...*; acc. of duration  
**quae...prohibērent:** relative clause of characteristic with impf. subj.
- 10 **suīs:** *to their people*; dat. indirect object  
**quanta...facultās...darētur:** *how great an opportunity would...*; indirect question governed by *demonstrāvērunt*  
**praedae faciendae:** *of freeing...*; gerund-gerundive flip; translate the gerundive as a gerund; modifying *facultās*  
**in perpetuum:** *forever*; “into perpetuity”
- 11 **suī liberandī:** *of freeing themselves*; gerund-gerundive flip; modifying *facultās*
- castris:** *from...*; abl. separation  
**expulissent:** plpf. subj.
- 12 **hīs rēbus:** *because of these matters*; abl. cause  
**multitudine...coactā:** ablative absolute
- 14 **idem fore:** *the same thing...would happen...*; “same thing...would be,” ind. disc. governed by *vidēbat*, *fore* is equivalent to *futūrum esse*, fut. infinitive of *sum*, *esse*;  
**superiōribus diēbus:** *in the days before yesterday*; abl. time when  
**ut...effugerent:** *(namely) that...*; noun result clause in apposition to *idem*
- 15 **essent pulsī:** plpf. passive subjunctive, *pellō*  
**celeritate:** *with speed*; abl. of manner  
**nactus:** pf. deponent pple, *nanciscor*  
**dē quō:** *concerning whom*
- 16 **dictum est:** *it was mentioned (by me)*; i.e. “I mentioned”
- 17 **commissō proeliō:** *the battle having been begun*; common idiom, *proelium committō*
- 18 **diūtius:** *longer*; comparative adv. *diū*  
**nostrōrum militum:** subject gen. + *impetum*  
**hostēs:** nom. subject of *potuērunt*, pf. *possum*  
**ferre:** *to endure*
- 19 **quōs...secūtī:** *having pursued these (Britons)*; “having pursued whom”  
**tantō spatiō...quantum:** *by as great an interval as*; abl. of degree of difference
- 19 **cursū et vīribus:** *with speed and (troop) force*; *vīribus* denotes troop size; abl. manner
- 20 **potuērunt...occidērunt:** the Roman cavalry is the subject, *complūrēs* is the direct object  
**omnibus...incensis:** abl. absolute  
**longē lātēque:** *far and wide*
- 21 **sē recēpērunt:** *retreated*, “took themselves back”
- 22 **Eōdem diē:** abl. time when

### Gerunds

A gerund (present stem + *nd* + 2<sup>nd</sup> decl. neut. sg. endings) is a verbal noun. It can govern an acc. obj. and is easy to distinguish from a gerundive because a gerund has only -ī/-ō/-um endings and does not modify a nearby noun.

Nominative	<i>Navigāre est difficile. To sail is difficult.</i>	
Genitive	<i>facultās <u>navigandī</u> opportunity for sailing</i>	
	<i><u>navigandī</u> causā for the sake of sailing</i>	
Dative	<i>ūtilis <u>navigandō</u> useful for sailing</i>	
Accusative	<i>ad <u>navigandum</u> for sailing (to sail)</i>	
Ablative	<i><u>navigandō</u> by sailing</i>	
	<i>in <u>navigandō</u> in sailing</i>	

Gen.	<i>navigandī</i>	<i>of sailing</i>
Dat.	<i>navigandō</i>	<i>for sailing</i>
Acc.	<i>navigandum</i>	<i>sailing</i>
Abl.	<i>navigandō</i>	<i>by sailing</i>

an infinitive not gerund as subject

gen. + *causā*/*grātiā* expresses purpose  
 dative of purpose

ad + gerund expresses purpose

ablative with or without a preposition

*ulciscendī Rōmānōs* *of avenging the Romans* occasionally with an acc. object

13.1 In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum, quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre, 1  
genera sunt duo. Nam plebēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet  
per sē, nullō adhibētur cōnsiliō. 2. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut  
magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in  
servitūtem dicant nōbilibus: in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra, quae dominīs in 5  
servōs. 3. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est Druidum, alterum equitum.  
4. Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia publica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs  
interpretantur: ad hōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā  
concurrīt, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. 5. Nam ferē dē omnibus  
controversiīs publicīs privātisque constituunt et, sī quod est admissum 10  
facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē fīnibus contrōversia est, idem  
decernunt, praemia poenāsque constituunt; 6. sī quī aut privātus aut populus  
eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs interdicit. Haec poena apud eōs est  
gravissima. 7. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac  
scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum sermonemque 15  
dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque hīs petentibus  
ius redditur neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur. 8. Hīs autem omnibus  
Druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctoritātem.

**aditus, -ūs m.:** approach, access, entrance, 2  
**adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum:** hold toward, admit, apply, 1  
**admittō, -ere, mīsi, missum:** admit, commit, allow, 2  
**adulescens, -ntis m./f.:** youth, 1  
**aes, aeris n.:** bronze, copper, 2  
**alienus, -a, -um:** of another, foreign, 2  
**auctōritās, -tātis f.:** influence, clout, 3  
**audeō, -ēre, ausus sum:** dare, venture, 4  
**caedēs, caedis f.:** murder, slaughter, killing, 2  
**communicō (1):** share, impart, 4  
**concurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursus:** run eagerly, clash, 2  
**contāgio, -giōnis f.:** contact; contagion, 1  
**dēcēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum:** depart, withdraw, die, 4  
**dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum:** decide, judge, 3  
**dēfugiō, -ere, -fūgī:** to flee away, avoid, 1  
**dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum:** dedicate, devote, 1  
**dīvinus, -a, -um:** divine, 1  
**dominus, -ī m.:** master, 1  
**facinus, facinoris n.:** deed; bad deed, crime 2  
**hērēditas, -tātis f.:** inheritance, 1  
**honor(s), -ōris m.:** honor, glory; offering, 2  
**impius, -a, -um:** unholy, impious, 1  
**incommodus, -a, -um:** unfortunate, disastrous, 3  
**iniūria, -ae f.:** wrong, insult, injustice, 4

**interdicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum:** to forbid, prohibit,  
outlaw, 2  
**interpretor, -ārī, :** to translate, interpret, 1  
**intersum, -esse, -fuī:** take part in, engage in, 1  
**iūs, iūris n.:** justice, law, right, 2  
**nōbilis, -e:** noble, renowned, 3  
**paene:** almost, nearly, 2  
**plebs, plēbis, f.:** common people, masses, 2  
**plērusque, -raque, -rumque:** very many, 2  
**poena, poenae, f.:** punishment, penalty, 3  
**potēns, -entis:** powerful, ruling (*gen.*), 2  
**praesum, -esse, -fuī:** be over, preside over, 2  
**prōcūrō (1):** take care of, look after, 1  
**reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** give back, return, 2  
**religiō, religiōnis f.:** superstitious rites, ritual,  
divine manifestation, 3  
**sacrificium, ī n.:** sacrifice, 4  
**scelerātus, -a, -um:** wicked, profane, guilty 1  
**sermo, -mōnis m.:** conversation, discourse, 3  
**servitūs, servitūtis, f.:** servitude, 2  
**servus, -ī, m.:** slave, 1  
**stō, -āre, steti, stātum:** stand still, stop, 3  
**tribūtum, -ī n.:** tribute, tax, contribution, 2

- 1 **eōrum hominum quī:** *of all these peoples*  
*who*; partitive genitive  
**aliquō numerō...honōre:** *are of some account*  
*and honor*; abl. of description, here predicate of sunt
- 2 **plēbēs:** *the masses*; though plural, it governs a 3<sup>rd</sup> sg. verb  
**habētur:** *are considered (to be)*; “are held”  
**locō:** *in the position...*; i.e. status in life
- 3 **per sē:** *by themselves*; lit. “through themselves”  
**adhībētur:** *are admitted*; + dat. of compound  
**cōnsiliō:** *council*; “assembly,” dat. compound
- 4 **cum...premuntur:** *when they are*  
*overwhelmed*; cum is an adverbial conjunction  
**aere aliēnō:** *by debt*; lit. “another’s money”  
**portentiōrum:** *of those more powerful*; gen. pl.  
**sēsē:** *themselves*; emphatic form of sē  
**dicant:** *they dedicate*; 1<sup>st</sup> conj. pres., not dīcō  
5 **sunt:** *(they) have*; “are (to them),” supply  
dat. of possession eīs, parallel to dominīs  
**in hōs:** *over them*; “towards them,” i.e. plebēs  
**quae dominīs:** *which masters (have)*; “which  
(there are) to masters,” dat. of possession with  
missing linking verb sunt  
**in servōs:** *over slaves*; “towards slaves”
- 6 **alterum (genus)...alterum (genus):** *one...the*  
*other*; neuter in agreement with missing genus
- 7 **illī:** i.e. Druids, nom. pl.  
**rēbus dīvīnīs:** dat. obj. of compound intersunt  
**intersunt...(et) prōcūrant...(et)**  
**interpretantur:** asyndeton, add conjunctions
- 9 **disciplīnae causā:** *for the sake of training*  
**magnō...honōre:** *of great honor*; abl. of  
description in the predicative position after sunt  
**apud eōs:** *among them*; i.e. among the Gauls
- 10 **sī quod...facinus:** *if any crime...*; aliquis,  
aliquod is a common indefinite adjective  
(Any, some), but quī, quod is commonly used  
as an indefinite (which → any, some) after sī,  
nisi, num, and nē. The mnemonic for this  
construction is the jingle “After sī, nisi, num,  
and nē, all the ali’s go away” (in other words  
indefinite aliquod becomes just quod)
- 11 **facta (est):** *has been committed*; pf. pass.  
**dē hērēditāte (aut) dē finibus:** asyndeton,  
supply “aut”
- 12 **īdem:** *likewise*  
**sī quī:** *if anyone...*; quī indefinite before sī, see  
line 10 above
- 13 **dēcrētō nōn stetit:** *did not abide by the*  
*decision*; “did not stand by the (thing) having  
been decided; abl. place where; pf. stō, stāre  
**sacrificiīs:** *from the sacrifices*; abl. separation
- 14 **apud eōs:** *among them*; i.e. among the Gauls  
**quibus...est interdictum, hī:** *these for whom*  
*it has been prohibited*; “for whom it has been  
prohibited, these...” hī is the antecedent of the  
relative clause beginning with quibus  
**numerō:** *in the number, group*; place where
- 15 **habentur:** *are considered (to be)*; “are held  
(to be),” see line 2 above  
**hīs:** *from these*; i.e. from those placed in the  
group of the wicked; abl. of separation  
**dēcēdunt (et)...dēfugiunt:** asyndeton, supply  
a conjunction  
**aditum:** *an encounter*
- 16 **nē quid incommodī:** *lest anything unsuitable*;  
quid is indefinite following sī, nisi, num, or  
nē; incommodī is a partitive gen.  
**neque...neque:** *neither...nor*  
**hīs petentibus:** *to these seeking*; pres. pple  
petō is condition in force; dat. indirect object
- 17 **praeest:** *is over (+ dat)*; compound verbs  
often govern a dative object

### Common Uses of the Dative

<u>construction</u>	<u>example</u>	<u>translation</u>
Dative of Indirect Object	eī filiam dat	<i>gives his daughter to him</i>
Dative of Compound Verbs	Druidibus praest	<i>is over the Druids</i>
Dative of Agent + Pass. Periphrastic	sibi iter faciendum esse	<i>a journey must be made by him</i>
Dative of Purpose	hibernīs mūnītum	<i>fortified for winter-quarters</i>
Dative of Possession + sum	quae dominīs sunt	<i>which are to masters</i> (= masters have)
Dative of Interest (Advantage)	nostrīs gravissimus	<i>most grievous for our men</i>
Dative of Reference*	mihi vidētur	<i>it seems to me</i> (i.e. from my viewpoint)
Dative of Special Adjectives	fūgae similem	<i>similar to flight</i>
Double Dative (purpose + interest)	magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit	<i>was for a great use to our men</i> → <i>served a great use to our men</i>

\*for some, interest and reference are the same construction

13.9 Hōc mortuō aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte succēdit, aut, sī sunt 1  
plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō Druidum, nōnnumquam etiam armīs dē principātū  
contendunt. 10. Hī certō annī tempore in finibus Carnūtum, quae regiō  
tōtīus Galliae media habētur, consīdunt in locō cōsecrātō. Hūc omnēs  
undique, quī contrōversiās habent, conveniunt eōrumque decrētīs iudiciīsque 5  
parent. 11. Disciplīna in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta esse  
exīstimātur, 12. et nunc, quī dīligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt,  
plērūmq̄ue illō discendī causā proficīscuntur.

14.1 Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs  
pendunt; mīlitiae vacātiōnem omniumque rērum habent immunitātem. 2. 10  
Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā  
parentibus propinquīsque mittuntur. 3. Magnum ibi numerum versuum  
ēdiscere dicuntur. Itaque annōs nōnnullī vīcēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. 4.  
Neque fās esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus,  
publicīs privātīsque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē 15  
causīs īnstituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgum disciplīnam efferrī velint  
neque eōs, quī discunt, litterīs cōnfīsōs minus memoriae studēre: quod ferē  
plērīsque accidit, ut praesidiō litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō ac  
memoriam remittant. 5. In prīmīs hoc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre  
animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem transīre ad aliōs, atque hōc maximē ad 20  
virtūtem excitārī putant metū mortis neglētō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus  
atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī ac terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē  
dēorum immortalīum vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

**anima, -ae f.:** breath, spirit, soul, 1

**Carnūtēs, -um:** Carnutes, 4

**confidō, -ere, confisus sum:** trust, believe, rely upon, 4

**consecrō (1):** dedicate to a god, make holy 2

**consideō, -ēre, -sēdī:** to sit down, settle, 2

**contendō, -ere, -ī, -ntus:** strive; hasten, 4

**dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum:** decide, judge, 3

**deus, -ī m.:** god, divinity, deity, 4

**dignitās, -tātis f.:** worth, merit, worthiness, 1

**dīligēns, -entis:** careful, diligent, accurate, 2

**diligentia, -ae f.:** diligence, attentiveness, 1

**discō, -ere, -didicī:** learn, get to know, 2

**disputō (1):** reckon, debate, argue, 1

**ēdiscō, -ere, -didicī:** to learn thoroughly, 1

**efferō, -ferre, -tulī, ēlātus:** raise, lift up 4

**ego:** I, 2

**excellō, -ere, :** be distinguished, excel, 1

**excitō (1):** excite, rouse up, raise, inspire, 3

**fās n.:** right, divine law, duty, 1

**Graecus, -a, -um:** Greek, 2

**hūc:** to this place, hither, here 2

**immortālis, -e:** immortal, 3

**immunitās, -tātis f.:** exception, immunity, 1

**inde:** from there, then, afterward, 3

**īnstitūō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum:** set, establish, 3

**intereō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum:** to die, perish, 3

**iudicium, -ī n.:** decision, judgment; trial 3

**iuventūs, -tūtis f.:** youth, 1

**mandō (1):** order, command, commit, 2

**medius -a -um:** in the middle of, 3

**memoria, -ae f.:** memory, 4

**metus, -ūs f.:** dread, fear, 2

**mīlitia, -ae f.:** military service; military, 2

**mortuus, -a, -um:** dead, 2

**mōtus, -ūs m.:** motion, 3

**mundus, -ī m.:** the world, 1

**nātūra, -ae f.:** nature, 3

**neglēgō, ere, -lēxī, neglētum:** to neglect, 3

**nōnnullus, -a, -um:** some, not none, 2

**nōnnumquam:** sometimes, not never, 1

**nunc:** now, at present, 2

**pār, paris:** equal, similar, even, 2

**parens, -rentis m.:** parent, ancestor, 1  
**pāreō, -ēre, -uī, pāritum:** obey, yield (dat) 1  
**pendō, -ere, pependī, pensum:** pay, weigh 2  
**perdiscō, -ere, -didicī:** learn thoroughly, 1  
**permaneō, -ere, -mansī:** to remain, stay, 1  
**plērusque, -raque, -rumque:** very many, 2  
**plūs (plūris):** more, 4  
**potestās, -tātis f.:** power, ability, capacity, 3  
**praesidium, -iī n.:** guard, protection; assistance, 2  
**praeterea:** besides, hereafter, 2  
**principātus, -ūs m.:** leadership, rule, 2  
**propinquus, -a, -um:** near, close; *subst.* kinsman, 2  
**putō (1):** to think, imagine, 3  
**regiō, regiōnis f.:** region, area, 1  
**remittō, -ere, -mīsī:** send back, let go, relax, 4

**reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum:** to discover, find, 1  
**sidus, sideris n.:** star; group of stars, constellation, 1  
**sponte:** willingly, voluntarily, 2  
**studeō, -ēre, uī:** be eager, strive after, 1  
**succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus:** go up, approach, 2  
**suffrāgium, -iī n.:** a vote, 1  
**terra, -ae. f.:** earth, ground, land, 2  
**trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum:** to give over, hand down, 3  
**transferō, ferre, tulī, lātum:** carry across, 1  
**tribūtum, -ī n.:** tribute, tax, contribution, 2  
**vacātio, -tiōnis f.:** exemption, immunity 1  
**vertō, -ere, -sī, -rsus:** turn, change, 1  
**vīceni, -a, -um:** twenty each, 1  
**vīs, vīs, f., pl. virēs:** force, power, violence, 4  
**vulgus, -ī n.:** mass, mob, multitude, 2

- 
- 1 **Hōc mortuō:** *this (one) being dead*; i.e. “if this one dies” abl. absolute is conditional in force, since there is no participle for sum, the subject and predicate are placed in the ablative  
**sī quī ex reliquis:** *if (anyone) who out of the rest...*; missing antecedent is subj. of succēdit  
**dignitāte:** *in dignity*; abl. of respect, governed by excellit not by succēdit
- 2 **plūrēs:** *more*; nom. subj., parēs is nom. pred.  
**nōnnumquam etiam:** *(and) sometimes even*; suffrāgiō and armīs are parallel, abl. of means
- 3 **certō...tempore:** abl. of time when  
**finibus:** *territory*
- 4 **media:** *center*; nom. predicate, the gen. tōfūs Galliae modifies media  
**habētur:** *is considered*; “is held,” quae regiō is subject, quae is a relative adjective
- 6 **reperta (esse):** *to have been invented*; pf. pass. inf. governed by exīstimātur  
**trānslāta esse:** pf. pass. inf. trānsferō  
**dīligentius:** comparative adverb  
**plērumque:** *frequently*  
**illō:** *to that place*; adverb  
**discendī causā:** *for the sake of learning*; causā governs a preceding gen.; gerund gen. sg.
- 9 **cōnsu(ēv)ērunt:** *are accustomed*; present sense  
**ūnā:** *together*; adverb
- 10 **pendunt:** *pay*; “weigh out”
- 11 **suā sponte:** *by their own will*
- 12 **versuum:** *of verses*; gen. pl.
- 13 **annōs...vīcēnōs:** *for twenty years*; duration  
**nōnnullī:** *several*; “not none”
- 14 **fās esse:** *that it is right*; impersonal verb in ind. discourse, mandāre is subject of esse  
**ea:** *these (things)*; neut. pl., i.e. these teachings  
**litterīs:** *to letters (of the alphabet)*; i.e. writing  
**cum...ūtantur:** *although...*; this cum + pres. subjunctive is concessive
- 15 **id...instituisse:** *to have established this*; i.e. not entrusting training to letters; pf. inf.  
**duābus dē causīs...quod:** *for two reasons...(namely) because*; as often, the adjective precedes the preposition; dat. and abl. pl. of duō is duābus/duōbus not duīs  
**mihi videntur:** *they seem to me*; “seem” is a common translation for the passive of videō
- 16 **in vulgum:** *to the masses*  
**efferrī:** pass. inf., disciplīnam is acc. subj.  
**velint:** *they wish*; pres. subj. of vōlō; quod + subjunctive denotes an alleged, not real, cause
- 17 **cōnfsōs:** *having trusted in* + dat; pf. dep. pple  
**minus...studere:** *pay less attention to memory* “have less enthusiasm for memory” eōs is acc. subj., minus is a comparative adverb
- 18 **plērīque:** *to very many*; dat. of interest; -que does not decline, but plērus- does  
**quod...accidit ut:** *because it happens...that*; accidit governs a noun result clause  
**praesidiō litterārum:** *with the assistance of (written) letters*; “with the protection of...”  
**in perdiscendō:** gerund abl. sg.
- 19 **remittant:** *they weaken*; “they let go”  
**in prīmīs:** *in particular*; “among the first”  
**hoc...nōn interīre animās:** *this...(namely) that...*; neuter sg. acc. object of persuādere, animās is acc. subject in indirect discourse  
**ab aliīs...ad aliōs:** *from some...into others*
- 20 **transīre:** animās is still acc. subject  
**hōc:** *because of this*; i.e. the reincarnation of souls, abl. of cause
- 21 **excitārī:** *that (people) are roused*; add hominēs as acc. subject  
**metū...neglectō:** abl. abs.  
**Multa:** *many (things)*; neut. pl. acc. d.o.

15.1 Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum 1  
 incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannīs accidere solēbat, utī aut  
 ipsī iniūriās inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur, 2.  
 atque eōrum ut quisque est genere copiisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum  
 sē ambactōs clientēsq̄ue habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiamq̄ue nōvērunt. 5

16.1 Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus, 2. atque ob  
 eam causam, quī sunt adfectī graviōribus morbīs quīque in proeliīs  
 periculīsque versantur, aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē  
 immolātūrōs vovent administrīsque ad ea sacrificia Druidibus ūtuntur, quod,  
 prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, 3. nōn posse deōrum 10  
 immortalīum nūmen placārī arbitrantur, pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent  
 īnstitutā sacrificia. Aliī immānī magnitūdine simulācra habent, 4. quōrum  
 contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succensīs,  
 circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. 5. Supplicia eōrum quī in furtō  
 aut in latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dīs immortalibus 15  
 esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēfēcit, etiam ad innocentium  
 supplicia dēscendunt.

17.1 Deum maximē Mercurium colunt. Huius sunt plūrima simulācra:  
 hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum  
 ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercatūrāsque habēre vim maximam 20  
 arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam.

**adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** afflict, affect, 3  
**administer, -strī m.:** performer, 1  
**admodum:** completely, quite; just about, 2  
**ambactus, -ī m.:** vassal, 1  
**amplus, -a, -um:** ample, full, spacious, 2  
**ante:** before, in front of (acc); *adv.* before, 4  
**Apollo, Apollinis m.:** Apollo, 2  
**ars, artis f.:** art, 1  
**circum:** around, round about, 2  
**cliens, -entis m.:** client, dependent, 4  
**colō, -ere, coluī, cultum:** till, farm; worship, 1  
**comprehendō, -ere, -dī:** seize, arrest; grasp 4  
**contegō, -ere, -texī, -tectum:** to cover over, 1  
**dēscendō, -ere, ī, ēnsus:** descend; sink to; stoop to, 1  
**dēditus, -a, -um:** given to, devoted to, 1  
**dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** fail, give out, 3  
**deus, -ī m.:** god, divinity, deity, 4  
**dux, ducis m./f.:** leader, guide, chief, 4  
**exanimō (1):** deprive of breath; kill, stun, 2  
**flamma, ae f.:** flame, 3  
**furtum, -ī n.:** theft, robbery, deceit, 1  
**grātia, -ae f.:** gratitude; favor, thanks, 2  
**grātus, -a, -um:** pleasing; grateful, 1

**immānis, -e:** immense, enormous, 1  
**immolō (1):** to sacrifice, immolate, 3  
**immortalis, -e:** immortal, 3  
**incidō, -ere, -cidī, -cisum:** happen, fall in with, 1  
**iniūria, -ae f.:** wrong, insult, injustice, 4  
**innocens, innocentis:** harmless, blameless, 1  
**instituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum:** set, establish, 2  
**inventor, -ōris m.:** inventor, 1  
**Iuppiter, Iovis m.:** Jupiter, 2  
**latrōcinium, -ī n.:** banditry, robbery, 1  
**Mars, Martis m.:** Mars, god of victory, 2  
**membrum, -ī n.:** limb, member, 1  
**mercātūra, -ae f.:** trade, traffic, 1  
**Mercurius, -ī m.:** Mercury, 1  
**Minerva, -ae f.:** Minerva, 2  
**morbis, -ī m.:** disease, sickness, illness, 2  
**natiō, natiōnis f.:** nation, people, tribe, 1  
**noscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum:** to learn, 1  
**noxia, -ae f.:** fault, offence, crime, 1  
**nūmen, -minis n.:** divine spirit or consent 1  
**pecūnia, -ae f.:** money, 3  
**placō (1):** soothe, calm, appease, placate, 1  
**plūrimus, -a, -um:** most, very many, 4

**potentia, -ae f.:** power, might, strength, 1  
**prōpellō, -ere, -pellī, -pulsum:** drive forward  
 or push away, 3  
**quaestus, -ūs m.:** gain, profit, advantage, 1  
**quotannis:** every year, year by year, 1  
**reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** give back, return, 2  
**religiō, religiōnis f.:** superstitious rites, ritual,  
 divine manifestation, 3  
**sacrificium, ī n.:** sacrifice, 4  
**simulācrum, -ī n.:** likeness, image, 2

**soleō, -ēre, -itus sum:** be accustomed, 1  
**succendō, -ere, -dī, censum:** kindle under, 2  
**supplicium, -iī n.:** punishment, 3  
**versor (1):** be engaged in, move about, deal with, 3  
**via, -ae, f.:** road, way, path, 2  
**victima, -ae f.:** animal for sacrifice, victim, 1  
**vīmen, vīminis n.:** twig, wicker, with, 1  
**vīs, vīs, f., pl. virēs:** force, power, violence, 4  
**vīvus, -a, -um:** living, alive, 2  
**vovō, -ere, vōvī, vōtum:** to vow; pray 1

- 1 **alterum genus:** *the other kind*; In 13.3 Caesar distinguished two groups, Druids and Knights. Here Caesar addresses the latter group.  
**equitum:** *of knights*  
**Hī:** *these*; i.e. the knights  
**cum est ūsus:** *when there is a need*; “is a use”  
 2 **incidit:** *occurs, happens*  
**quod:** *which*  
**utī...inferrent...prōpulsarent:** (*namely*) *that...*; utī is an alternative to ut; noun result clause in apposition to quod with impf. subjunctives (secondary sequence) governed by accīdere  
 3 **ipsī:** *they themselves*; i.e. the knights  
**illātās:** *carried on*; PPP inferō, supply *inūriās*  
 4 **eōrum ut quisque...ita:** *in the proportion as each one of them is...so...;* in other words “the more...the more,” ut and ita are correlatives  
**genere copīisque:** *in birth and...;* abl. respect  
**amplissimus:** *very distinguished*  
 5 **hanc...grātiā:** *this lone (form) of influence*  
**nōvērunt:** *they have come to learn*; or “they know,” pf. noscō  
 6 **dēdita:** *devoted to*; governs a dative plural  
**ob eam causam:** *for this reason*  
 7 **quī:** (*those*) *who...*  
**sunt adfectī:** pf. passive adficiō, + abl. means  
**quīque:** *and (those) who...;* second parallel clause parallel to the first  
 8 **prō victimīs:** *instead of sacrificial animals*  
**immolātūrōs (esse):** *will sacrifice (them)*; fut. inf., sē is acc. subj.; governed by vovent  
 9 **administrīs...Druidibus:** *Druids as performers*; abl. obj. of ūtuntur

- ad...:** *for...;* expressing purpose  
**quod:** *because*  
 10 **prō vitā hominis:** *for the life of a man*;  
 governed by the nisi...reddātur  
**posse...placārī:** numen is acc. subject  
**prō vitā hominis:** *for the life of a man*;  
 11 **eiusdem generis:** *of the same sort*; gen. of quality  
 12 **immāni magnitūdine:** *of immense size*; abl. of quality, immānis is an i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. adj.  
**simulācra:** *likeness*; Caesar describes image in the likeness of a man made of wicker  
 13 **membra:** acc. direct object of complent  
**vīvīs hominibus:** abl. of means  
**quibus succensīs:** *with these (images)...*; gen. abs. Caesar prefers to use a relative pronoun where English prefers the demonstrative  
 14 **quī...sint:** *who...are*; pres. subjunctive sum in a relative clause of characteristic  
 15 **grātīora:** *more pleasing*; acc. pred. with esse  
**dīs immortalibus:** *to the immortal gods*; an alternative form for dat. pl. deīs  
 16 **eius generis cōpia:** *supply of this sort*; i.e. of criminals  
 18 **Huius:** *of this one*; i.e. Mercury, gen. sg.  
 19 **ferunt:** *they call this one the inventor...;* governs a double accusative, inventōrem is in the predicative position  
**hunc...ducem:** *they call this one the guide...;*  
 20 **hunc...habēre:** *that this one...;* ind. discourse governed by arbitrantur  
**vim maximam:** *the greatest influence*  
 21 **Apollinem...Minervam:** supply colunt

**volō, velle, voluī: to wish:** Regular 3<sup>rd</sup> Conj. except Infinitive, Present Indicative and Present Subjunctive

	pres.	vult	she wishes	present indicative	present subjunctive	imperfect subjunctive		
impf.	volēbat	she was wishing	volō	volumus	velim	velimus	vellem	vellēmus
fut.	volet	she will wish	vīs	<u>vultis</u> <sup>1</sup>	velīs	velītis	vellēs	vellētis
perf.	voluit	she wished	vult	<u>volunt</u> <sup>2</sup>	<u>velit</u> <sup>3</sup>	<u>velint</u> <sup>4</sup>	vellet	<u>vellent</u> <sup>5</sup>
plupf.	volerat	she had wished						
fut. pf.	volerit	she will have wished						

<sup>1</sup>p. 14, 46   <sup>2</sup>p. 28   <sup>3</sup>p. 52   <sup>4</sup>p. 28, 42, 58, 60   <sup>5</sup>p. 10, 40, 52, 58, 62

17.2. Dē hīs eandem ferē, quam reliquae gentēs, habent opiniōnem: 1  
 Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia  
 trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Martem bella regere. 3. Huic,  
 cum proeliō dīmīcāre constituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērūmque  
 dēvovent: cum superāvērunt, animalia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in 5  
 ūnum locum conferunt. 4. Multīs in civitatibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs  
 tumulōs locīs consecrātīs conspicārī licet; 5. neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā  
 quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere auderet,  
 gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū constitūtum est.

18.1 Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab Druidibus 10  
 prōditum dīcunt. 2. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō  
 diērum sed noctium fīniunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsūm et annōrum initia sic  
 observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. 3. In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab  
 reliquīs differunt, quod suōs līberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt, ut mūnus mīlītiaē  
 sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre non patiuntur filiumque puerīlī aetāte in 15  
 pūblicō in cōnspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.

**adeō, -ire, i(v)ī, itus:** approach, encounter, 2  
**adolescō, -ere, adolevī:** to grow up, 1  
**adsistō, -ere, adstītī:** stand by, set near, 1  
**aetās, aetātis f.:** age, time, lifetime, 1  
**animal, animalis n.:** animal, 2  
**Apollo, Apollinis m.:** Apollo, 2  
**artificium, -ī m.:** work, craft, work of art, 1  
**audeō, -ēre, ausus sum:** dare, venture, 4  
**caelestis, -e:** celestial, heavenly; *subs.* gods, 1  
**conficiō, -ere:** to exhaust, finish, 4  
**consecrō (1):** dedicate to a god, make holy 2  
**conspicō, -ūs, m.:** look, sight, view, 2  
**conspicor, -ārī:** catch sight of, perceive, 1  
**cruciātus, -ūs m.:** torture, torment, 2  
**dēpellō, -ere, -puli, -pulum:** drive out, 1  
**dēvoeō, -ere, vōvī, vōtum:** vow, sacrifice, 1  
**differō, -ferre, distuli:** differ, be different, 2  
**dīmīcō (1):** brandish weapons; contend, 1  
**Dis, Ditis, -ī m.:** Dis, Pluto, 1  
**exstruō, -ere, -struxī, -structum:** build up, 1  
**fīniō, -īre:** to end, limit, bound, 1  
**gens, gentis, f.:** people, tribe, nation, 1  
**immolō (1):** to sacrifice, immolate, 3  
**īnstitutum, ī n.:** institution, practice, custom, 2  
**Iuppiter, Iovis m.:** Jupiter, 2  
**līberī, -ōrum m.:** children 2  
**Mars, Martis m.:** Mars, god of victory, 2  
**mēnsis, -is m.:** month, 2  
**mīlītia, -ae f.:** military service; military, 2

**Minerva, -ae f.:** Minerva, 2  
**morbū, -ī m.:** disease, sickness, illness, 2  
**mūnus, -eris n.:** service, duty; tax, gift, 1  
**nātālis, -e:** natal, of birth, 1  
**neglēgō, -ere, -lēxī, neglēctum:** to neglect, 3  
**observō (1):** watch, observe, attend to, 2  
**occultō (1):** hide, conceal, 3  
**opus, -eris n.:** work, deed, toil, 2  
**opīniō, -niōnis f.:** opinion, thought, belief, 2  
**palam:** openly, publicly, 2  
**pater, patris, m.:** father, 4  
**patior, -ī, passus:** suffer, endure; allow, 2  
**praedicō (1):** proclaim, publish, declare, 2  
**prōdō, -ere, didī, ditum:** bring forth; betray 2  
**prōgnātus, -a, -um:** born, sprung from, 1  
**puerilis, -e:** youthful, childish; silly, 1  
**quispiam, quae-, quod-:** anyone, anything (adj. any), 2  
**regō, -ere, rēxī, rectum:** rule, lead, direct, 1  
**religiō, religiōnis f.:** superstitious rites, ritual,  
 divine manifestation, 3  
**saepe:** often, 3  
**sic:** thus, in this way, 3  
**spatium, -ī n.:** space, room, extent, 4  
**supplicium, -ī n.:** punishment, 3  
**tollō, -ere, sustuli, sublātum:** raise, destroy, 2  
**trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum:** to give over,  
 hand down, pass down, 3  
**tumulū, -ī m.:** pile, heap, mound, hill, 1  
**turpis, turpe:** ugly, shameful, 2

- 1 **Dē hīs**: *concerning these*; i.e. Apollo, Minerva, Juno, Jupiter  
**eandem...quam reliquae gentēs**: *the same... as the rest of the people (have)*; “the same... which the rest of the people (have),” eandem modifies opiniōnem
- 2 **Apollinem...Minervam...Iovem...Martem**: *that Apollo...(and) that Minerva...(and) that Jupiter...(and) that Mars...*; acc. subjects of ind. discourse in apposition to opiniōnem; asyndeton, supply conjunctions
- 3 **huic**: *to this one*; i.e. Mars
- 4 **cum proeliō**: *when...in battle*; cum is adverbial  
**ea quae...cēperint**: *those things which...*; ea is neuter pl. object of dēvovent; cēperint is pf. subjunctive in a relative clause of characteristic
- 5 **cum superāvērunt**: *when they have overcome (an enemy)*
- 6 **multīs**: modifies cīvitātibus; placing the adj. before the preposition emphasizes the role of the adjective  
**hārum rērum**: *with these things*; modifies tumulōs
- 7 **locīs consecrātīs**: *in...*; abl. place where  
**ut quispiam...auderet**: *that anyone...dare to*; noun result clause, impf. subjunctive audeō which governs complementary infinitives  
**neglēctā...religiōne**: *with religious observance...*; ablative absolute
- 8 **capta**: *things seized*; PPP capiō in neuter pl., i.e. the rēs in line 5  
**apud sē**: *in their home*
- posita tollere**: *to destroy things having be put aside*; PPP pōnō, -ere in neuter pl.
- 9 **eī reī**: *for this matter*; dat. sg.
- 10 **sē...prōgnātōs (esse)**: *that they were born*; prōgnātōs is either an acc. predicate with missing inf. esse or part of a pf. passive inf.  
**id...prōditum (esse)**: *that this was brought forth...*; pf. pass. inf. prōdō in ind. discourse
- 11 **ob eam causam**: *for this reason*  
**spatia omnis temporis**: *intervals of every (period of) time*
- 12 **noctium**: i-stem gen. plural nox, noctis  
**et mēsum (initia) et annōrum initia**: *and the beginnings of months and of years*; acc. object of observant  
**sīc...ut**: *in this way...so that*; result clause
- 13 **hōc...quod**: *in this...(namely) because*; abl. of respect governed by differunt  
**suōs liberōs...adīre**: *that their children...*; acc. subj. of ind. discourse following patiuntur
- 14 **mūnus militiae**: *military service*; “service of the military”
- 15 **nōn patiuntur**: *do not allow*; 3<sup>rd</sup> pl. pres. patior
- 16 **filiumque...adsistere (esse) turpe dūcunt**: *and they consider it is shameful that a son... stand...*; supply (esse); the infinitive adsistere is subject of the missing esse and turpe is acc. predicate; all indirect discourse governed by dūcunt, filium is acc. subject of adsistere  
**puerīlī aetate**: *of a boy’s age*; abl. of quality

**Common Uses of the Ablative**

<u>construction</u>	<u>example</u>	<u>translation</u>
Ablative Absolute	urbe captā	<i>the city having been captured</i>
Ablative of Means	stilō scrībēns	<i>writing with a stylus</i>
Ablative of Agent	ā matre vocātur	<i>he is called by his mother</i>
Ablative of Separation (includes From Which)	timore liberātur	<i>she is free from fear</i>
Ablative of Manner	cum diligentīā	<i>with diligence</i>
Ablative of Accompaniment	cum amīcīs	<i>with friends</i>
Ablative of Place Where	in urbibus	<i>in the cities</i>
Ablative of Place From Which	ab marī	<i>from the sea</i>
Ablative of Time When	eō tempore	<i>at that time</i>
Ablative of Respect (Specification)	linguā differunt	<i>differ in respect to language</i>
Ablative of Quality (Description)	est animō bonō	<i>is of good will</i>
Ablative of Cause	gaudiō commōtus	<i>moved by joy</i>
Ablative of Comparison	clārior luce	<i>brighter than light</i>
Ablative of Degree of Difference	multō clārior	<i>much brighter</i>
w/ verbs: <i>potior, utor, fungor, fruor, vescor</i>	utī gladiō	<i>to employ a sword</i>
w/ adjectives: <i>dignus, indignus</i>	glōriā indignus	<i>unworthy of glory</i>

19.1 Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex  
 suīs bonīs aestimātiōne factā, cum dōtibus commūnicant. 2. Huius omnis  
 pecūniae coniūctim ratiō habētur fructūque servātur: uter eōrum vītā  
 superāvit, ad eum pars utrūque cum fructibus superiōrum temporum  
 pervenit. 3. Virī in uxōrēs, sicutī in līberōs, vītāe necisque habent potestātem;  
 et cum paterfamiliae illūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt  
 et, dē morte sī rēs in suspiciōnem venit, dē uxōribus in servīlem modum  
 quaestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs  
 excruciatās interficiunt. 4. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et  
 sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur in ignem īferunt,  
 etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā hanc memoriā servī et clientēs, quōs ab eīs  
 dīllectōs esse constābat, iustīs fūneribus cōfectīs ūnā cremābantur.

20.1 Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicā administrāre  
 exīstimantur, habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā finitimīs  
 rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō  
 commūnicet, 2. quod saepe hominēs temerariōs atque imperitōs falsīs  
 rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōsiliū capere  
 cognitum est. 3. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant quaeque esse ex ūsū  
 iūdicāverunt multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per cōnciliū loquī nōn  
 concēditur.

**administrō (1):** to manage, direct; help, 3  
**aestimātiō, -tionis f.:** valuation, assessment 1  
**animal, animalis n.:** animal, 2  
**bonus, -a, -um:** good, kind(ly), useful 2  
**cliens, -entis m.:** client, dependent, 4  
**commodus, -a, -um:** convenient, suitable, 2  
**communicō (1):** share, impart, 4  
**comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertum:** find out, discover, 1  
**concēdō, -ere:** go away, withdraw, yield, 2  
**conficiō, -ere:** to exhaust, finish, 4  
**coniūctim:** jointly, in common, 1  
**constō, -āre, -stifī:** stand together, 2  
**cor, cordis n.:** the heart, 1  
**cremō (1):** burn, consumer by fire, 2  
**cultus, -ūs m.:** culture, refinement, 2  
**dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum:** depart, die, 4  
**diligō, -ere, -lexī, -lectum:** to love, esteem, 1  
**dōs, dotis f.:** dowry, gift, 2  
**excruciō (1):** torture, torment, 1  
**facinus, facinoris n.:** deed; bad deed, crime 2  
**falsus, -a, -um:** wrong, mistaken, misled, 1  
**fāma, -ae f.:** rumor, story, hearsay, 2  
**fructus, -ūs m.:** profit, advantage, benefit, fruit, 2  
**fūnus, fūneris n.:** funeral, burial; death, 2  
**ignis, ignis, m.:** fire, 4

**illustris, -e:** bright, distinguished, 1  
**impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus:** drive, rouse 2  
**imperitus, a, um:** unskilled, inexperienced, 2  
**iūdicō (1):** judge, decide, assess, 2  
**iustus, -a, -um:** just, fair, 1  
**lēx, lēgis f.:** law, regulation, decree, 3  
**līberī, -ōrum m.:** children, 2  
**loquor, -ī, locūtum:** speak, say, 2  
**magistratus, -ūs m.:** magistrate, officer, 3  
**magnificus, -a, -um:** magnificent, splendid 1  
**memoria, -ae f.:** memory, 4  
**modus, ī n.:** manner, form; measure, 4  
**nascor, nascī, nātus sum:** be born, grow, 3  
**nēvē:** or not, and not, nor, 2  
**nex, necis f.:** death, violent death, murder, 1  
**nōmen, nōminis n.:** name, 2  
**occultō (1):** hide, conceal, 3  
**paterfamiāas, -ae m.:** paterfamilias, 1  
**pecūnia, -ae f.:** money, 3  
**potestās, -tātis f.:** power, ability, capacity, 3  
**prōdō, ere, didī, ditum:** bring forth; betray 2  
**propinquus, -a, -um:** near, close; *subst.* kinsman, 2  
**quaesitio, -tionis f.:** investigation, inquiry, 1  
**rūmor, rūmoris f., -ae f.:** rumor, hearsay, 2  
**saepe:** often, 3

**sanctus, -a, -um:** consecrated, hallowed, 1  
**servilis, -e:** slavish, servile, of a slave, 1  
**servō (1):** save, keep, preserve, 2  
**servus, -ī, m.:** slave, 1  
**sicut:** just as, so as, as if, 2  
**sumō, -ere, sumpsī, sumptum:** take, spend 2  
**suprā:** above, over, on the top, 3  
**suspīcio, -ciōnis f.:** mistrust, suspicion, 4

**temerārius, -a, -um:** rash, inconsiderate, 1  
**terreō, -ēre, terruī, territum:** to terrify, 2  
**tormentum, -ī n.:** missile-launcher, torture, 3  
**uter, utra, utrum:** each or one (of two), 2  
**uxor, ūxorīs f.:** wife, spouse, 3  
**vir, virī m.:** man, 4  
**vīvus, -a, -um:** living, alive, 2

- 
- 1 **Virī:** *husbands*; an appropriate translation in light of the discussion of wives, *uxōrēs*  
**quantās...tantās:** *as much money...so much*; correlatives; relative and demonstrative respectively  
**dōtis nōmine:** *in the name of a dowry*  
**ex suīs...factā:** ablative absolute  
**commūnicant:** *contribute (an equal share)*; i.e. the husband makes a contribution matching the value of the dowry
- 2 **huius omnis pecūniae:** *of...;* objective gen. governed by *ratīō*
- 3 **ratīō habētur:** *an account is made*; “is held”  
**fructūs:** *the profits*; nom., the word “usufruct” denotes a husband’s ability to enjoy the use and profits of a wife’s dowry as long as he does not diminish the original value of the dowry  
**uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum:** *which one of them has survived (the other) in life, to this one...;* abl. of respect; *eum*, though masculine, can apply to the surviving husband or wife
- 4 **pars utrūsq̄ue:** *the portion of each one*; i.e. the dowry and the husband’s contribution  
**superiōrum:** *previous*; gen. pl. comparative
- 5 **in uxōrēs...in liberōs:** *toward...toward*  
**sicutī:** alternative to *sicut*
- 6 **paterfamiliae:** *the paterfamilias*; nom. subject  
**illūstriōre locō:** *in a more illustrious position*  
**nātus:** pf. passive pple. nascor  
**dēcessit:** *has died*; “departed,” a euphemism
- 7 **dē morte:** *concerning death*; modifies *rēs*  
**in servilem modum:** *in the manner of slaves*; i.e. just as they investigate slaves after the death of a master, so a wife after the death of her husband
- 8 **compertum est:** *it is discovered*; incriminating evidence  
**ignī:** i-stem abl. singular
- 9 **prō cultū:** *according to the culture*
- 10 **vīvīs cordī fuisse:** *to have been dear to the living*; *cordī* is a predicative dative commonly found with inf. of *sum*; *vīvīs* is dat. of interest
- 11 **paulō:** *a little*; abl. of degree of difference  
**suprā hanc memoriā:** *before our time*; “before this (living) memory”
- 12 **constābat:** *it was agreed*; “it stood fixed”  
**ab eis:** *by them*; i.e. by the dead  
**dilēctōs esse:** pf. pass. inf.  
**iūstīs fūneribus cōfectīs:** *the due funerals completed*; abl. absolute  
**ūnā:** *together*; living burned with the dead
- 13 **quae civitātēs..existimantur:** *the cities which they consider to...*  
**commodius:** *more advantageously*; comparative adverb  
**habent lēgibus sānctum...utī...:** *have it ordained by laws...that*; *utī* (*ut*) introduces an indirect command with pres. subjunctive
- 14 **sī quis quid...accēperit:** *if anyone has received anything...;* *aliquis*, *aliquid* is a common indefinite pronoun (anyone, anything), but *quis*, *quid* is commonly used as an indefinite (who → anyone, what → anything) after *sī*, *nisi*, *num*, and *nē*. The mnemonic for this construction is the jingle “After *sī*, *nisi*, *num*, and *nē*, all the *ali*’s go away” (in other words indefinite *aliquid* becomes just *quid*); *accēperit* is pf. subj.  
**ā finitimīs:** *from neighbors, from those near*
- 15 **cum quō aliō:** *with anyone else*; see note 1. 15  
**quod:** *because*
- 16 **hominēs...terrērī...impellī...capere:** *that people...;* infs. are subject of *cognitum est*
- 17 **dē summīs rēbus:** *concerning the most important matters*  
**quae vīsa sunt:** *(those things) which seemed best (to hide)*  
**quaeque...iūdicāvērunt:** *and (those things) which...;* missing antecedent is obj. of *produnt esse ex ūsū:* *is of use*; i.e. advantageous
- 19 **multitudinī:** dat. indirect object  
**prōdunt:** *bring forth*; in contrast to *occultant*  
**loquī:** pres. deponent infinitive
- 20 **concēditur:** *it is allowed*; “it is yielded”

24.1 Subductīs nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrīvae perāctō, quod eō 1  
 annō frūmentum in Galliā propter siccitātēs angustius prōvēnerat, coāctus  
 est aliter ac superiōribus annīs exercitum in hibernīs collocāre legiōnēsque in  
 plūrēs civitatēs distribuere; 2. ex quibus ūnam in Morinōs ducendam Gaiō  
 Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nervio Quintō Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esubiōs 5  
 Lucio Rōsciō; quartam in Rēmīs cum Titō Labiēnō in confiniō Trēverōrum  
 hiemāre iussit. Trēs in Belgīs collocāvit: 3. eīs Marcum Crassum quaestorem  
 et Lucium Munātium Plancum et Gaium Trebōnium lēgātōs praefecit. 4. Ūnam  
 legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum cōscripserat, et cohortēs V in  
 Eburōnēs, quōrum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub 10  
 imperiō Ambiorīgis et Catuvolcī erant, mīsit. 5. Eīs mīlitibus Quintum  
 Titūrium Sabīnum et Lucium Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praesesse iussit.  
 6. Ad hunc modum distribūtīs legiōnibus, facillimē inopiae frūmentāriae sēsē  
 medērī posse exīstimāvit. 7. Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnum hīberna  
 praeter eam, quam Luciō Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem 15  
 dūcendam dederat, mīlibus passuum centum continēbantur. 8. Ipse intereā,  
 quoad legiōnēs collocātās mūnītaque hīberna cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī  
 cōstituit.

**aliter:** otherwise, 2

**angustus, -a, -um:** narrow, confined, 4

**Aurunculeius, -ī m.:** Aurunculeius, 2

**Catuvolcus -ī m.:** Catuvolcus, 2

**centum:** one hundred, 1

**collocō (I):** place together, arrange, set up, 4

**confinium, -ī n.:** a confine, limit, border, 1

**conscribō, -ere, -scripsī:** enlist, enroll, 2

**distribūō, -ere, -buī, -būtum:** divide up, 2

**Ēsubiī, -ōrum m.:** the Esubii, 1

**Fabius, -ī m.:** Fabius, 3

**frūmentārius, -a, -um:** full of grain, 2

**Gaius, -ī m.:** Gaius, 4

**hiemō (I):** spend the winter, 3

**inopia, -ae f.:** poverty, want (of), need, 1

**intereā:** meanwhile, meantime, 3

**Marcus, -ī m.:** Marcus, 1

**medeor, -ērī:** heal, cure; assist, alleviate (dat) 1

**modus, ī n.:** manner, form; measure, 4

**Morinī, -ōrum m.:** Morini, 1

**moror, -ārī, -ātus:** delay, linger; detain, 3

**Mosa, -ae f.:** Mosa (Meuse) river, 1

**Munātius, -ī m.:** Munatius, 1

**muniō, -īre, -ivī, -ītum:** to fortify, build, 3

**pācātus, -a, -um:** peaceful, quiet, 2

**Padus, -ī m.:** Padus (Po) river, 1

**peragō, -ere, ēgī, actum:** pass, go through, 1

**Plancus, -ī m.:** Plancus, 2

**plūs (plūris):** more, 4

**praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** set (acc) over (dat), put  
(acc) in charge over (dat), 2

**praesum, -esse, -fuī:** be over, preside over (dat), 2

**praeter:** beyond, past (+ acc.), 2

**prōveniō, -īre, -vēnī:** come forward, grow 1

**quaestor, -oris m.:** quaestor, 3

**quartus, -a, -um:** the fourth, 2

**quiētus, -a, -um:** resting, calm, undisturbed 1

**quoad:** until, as far as, as long as, 1

**Rēmī, -ōrum m.:** Rheims (town), 1

**Roscius, ī m.:** Roscius, 2

**Samarobrīva, -ae f.:** Samarobriva (a town) 2

**siccitās, -tātis f.:** dryness, 1

**subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus:** draw up., 2

**Titus, -ī m.:** Titus, 4

**trans;** over, across (+ acc.), 3

**Trebōnius, -ī m.:** Trebonius, 1

**Trēveri, -ōrum m.:** Treveri (Germanic), 4

**Background:** Upon return from the second expedition to Britain, Caesar discovers that on account of drought the grain supply will be low for the winter. Since no one region can supply the grain for the army, Caesar distributes his forces into a number of smaller camps which, one assumes, can live off the grain in their particular region.

- 1 **Subductis nāvibus:** *the ships drawn up (on shore);* sub- as a prefix often means “up from under,” the ships were driven onto the beach  
**cōnciliō...peractō:** abl. absolute  
**Samarobrīvae:** *at Samarobriva;* locative case  
**quod:** because
- 2 **eō annō:** *on that...;* eō is demonstrative; abl. place where  
**angustus:** *more limited, scarcer;* “narrower,” i.e. less grain, comparative adj. neut. sg. with frūmentum the subject of prōvēnerat  
**coactus est:** *he was compelled;* pf. pass. cōgō
- 3 **aliter ac:** *otherwise than;* common translation of aliter with ac or atque  
**superiōribus:** *in previous...;* “higher” time when  
**hibernis:** *winter-quarters*
- 4 **plūrēs:** acc. pl. plūs, comparative of multus  
**ex quibus:** *from these;* “from which,” in a transition Caesar prefers a relative pronoun where English prefers a demonstrative  
**ūnam:** *one (legion)*  
**in Morinōs:** *among the Morini*  
**ducendam:** *to be led;* “going to be led,” gerundive expressing purpose modifying ūnam and governing “in Morinōs”  
**Gaiō Fabiō...Rōsciō:** dative indirect object
- 5 **dedit:** pf. dō, dare  
**alteram...tertiā:** *another (legion)...a third (legion)...;* parallel to “ūnam...dedit,” supply to each clause “ducendam” and “dedit” which are missing through ellipsis (omission)
- 6 **quartam:** *the fourth (legion)*
- 7 **Trēs:** *three (legions)*
- eīs:** *over them;* dat. with compound praefēcit
- 8 **praefēcit:** *put (acc) in charge of (dat)*
- 9 **proximē:** *very recently;* “nearest (in time) superlative adverb
- 10 **quōrum:** *of which;* partitive genitive
- 11 **Eīs:** *over them;* dat. with compound praesesse
- 12 **Quintum...lēgātōs:** acc. subject of praesesse
- 13 **Ad hunc modum:** *in this manner;* “according to this manner” part of the ablative absolute distribūtis legiōnibus  
**inopiae...medēri:** *to alleviate the need;* dat. object of dep. medeor  
**sēsē:** *that he...;* reflexive acc. subject of posse
- 15 **praeter eam, quam:** *except that (legion) which...;*  
**Luciō Rōsciō:** dat. i.o. of dederat, plpf. dō  
**In...partem:** *into...part (of Gallia)*  
**pācātissimam, quiētissimam:** superlatives
- 16 **ducendum:** *to be led;* “going to be led,” gerundive expressing purpose modifying quam (legiōnem) and governing “in...partem”  
**mīlibus...centum:** *by 100 miles;* “by 100 thousand of paces”  
**continēbantur:** hiberna is the neut. pl. subject
- 17 **quoad...cōgnōvisset:** *until he had learned;* plpf. subjunctive; i.e. he delayed in Gaul until he had learned all had been arranged  
**legiōnēs collocātās (esse):** *that the legions...;* ind. discourse, supply esse for pf. pass. inf.  
**hiberna mūnita (esse):** *that winter-quarters;* ind. discourse, supply esse for pf. pass. inf.  
**morārī:** present deponent inf. moror

### Command in the Winter-Quarters

The highest officer in the Roman Army was the **dux**, general. When a Roman dux won an important victory, he might be given the title **imperātor**, commander, by his own men. The officers who ranked immediately below the dux and were selected by him to lead a single legion were called **legātī**, a word that means “the commissioned” but is often translated as lieutenant-generals or more commonly legates. This word “legātus” is also used to describe envoys commissioned to convey information on behalf of the dux or senate, so readers should be careful to distinguish a legātus who leads a legion from a legātus who carries news, for example, from Caesar to his allies.

In the passage above, Caesar assigns a legion to each of a number of legātī who will play a role in the events that follow in Book V: **Gaius Fabius**, **Quintus Cicero**, brother of the famous orator, **Lucius Roscius**, **Titus Labienus**, **Lucius Munatius Plancus**, **Gaius Trebonius**, **Quintus Titūrius Sabinus** and **Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta**. In order to possess *imperium*, the power to command, these legates had to have been elected by the Centuriate Assembly in Rome at some point in the past to the office of praetor or consul. All the legates, therefore, were members of the senatorial class.

In addition to the legates, Caesar appointed a legion in winter-quarters to the **quaestor** Marcus Crassus, son of the wealthy M. Licinius Crassus. Elected by Rome’s Tribal Assembly, quaestors were financial officers. On a military campaign, a quaestor would be chosen by the dux from among the elected quaestors and was responsible for distributing soldiers’ pay and procuring supplies.

25.1 Erat in Carnūtibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius, cuius māiōrēs in suā 1  
 civitāte regnum obtinuerant. 2. Huic Caesar prō eius virtūte atque in sē  
 benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellīs singulārī eius operā fuerat ūsus,  
 māiōrum locum restituerat. 3. Tertium iam hunc annum regnantem inimicī,  
 multīs palam ex civitāte eius auctōribus, eum interfēcērunt. 4. Defertur ea rēs 5  
 ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plūrēs pertinēbat, nē cīvitas eōrum impulsū  
 dēficeret, Lucium Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnūtēs  
 proficiscī iubet ibique hiemāre quōrumque operā cognōverat Tasgetium  
 interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. 5. Interim ab omnibus lēgātīs  
 quaestōreque, quibus legiōnēs trādiderat, certior factus est in hīberna 10  
 perventum locumque hībernīs esse mūnītum.

26.1 Diēbus circiter XV, quibus in hīberna ventum est, initium repentinī  
 tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis ortum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō; 2. quī, cum ad  
 finēs regnī suī Sabīnō Cottaēque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hīberna  
 comportāvissent, Indūtiomārī Trēverī nūntiīs impulsī, suōs concitāvērunt 15  
 subitōque oppressīs lignātōribus magnā manū ad castra oppugnātum  
 vērunt. 3. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cepissent vallumque adscendissent  
 atque ūnā ex parte Hispānīs equitibus ēmissīs equestri proeliō superiōrēs  
 fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppugnātiōne redūxērunt.

**ascendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus:** ascend, mount 2

**auctor, auctoris m.:** agent, doer, cause, 4

**Belgium -ī n.:** Belgium (part of Belgae), 2

**benevolentia, -ae, f.:** goodwill, kindness, 1

**Carnūtēs, -um:** Carnutes, 4

**Catuvolcus -ī m.:** Catuvolcus, 2

**comportō (1):** carry together, collect, 3

**comprehendō, -ere, -dī:** seize, arrest; grasp 4

**concitō (1):** stir up, incite, impel, 2

**dēfectio, -tiōnis f.:** rebellion, defection, 1

**dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** fail, give out, 3

**dēspērō (1):** to have no hope, give up, 2

**ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** send away 1

**equester, -stris, -stre:** equestrian, 1

**hiemō (1):** spend the winter, 3

**Hispānī, -ōrum m.:** Spaniard, 1

**iam:** now, already, soon, 4

**impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus:** drive, rouse 2

**impulsus, -ūs m.:** incitement, pressure, 1

**Indutiomarus, -ī m.:** (chief of Treveri), 1

**inimicus, -a, -um:** hostile, unfriendly, 4

**lignātor, -ōris m.:** wood-cutter, 1

**muniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum:** to fortify, build, 3

**nascor, nascī, nātus sum:** be born, grow, 3

**opera, operae f.:** service, hard work, effort, 3

**opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum:** crush,  
burden, overwhelm, 3

**orior, -īrī, ortus:** arise, rise, spring, 3

**palam:** openly, publicly, 2

**Plancus, -ī m.:** Plancus, 2

**plūs (plūris):** more, 4

**praestō:** at hand, present, at the service of (dat) 1

**quaestor, -oris m.:** quaestor, 3

**redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus:** to bring back, 3

**regnō (1):** to reign, rule as a king, 1

**repentinus, -a, -um:** sudden, unexpected, 4

**restitūō, -ere, -stitūī, -ductus:** to restore, replace, 1

**singulāris, -e:** single, individual, alone, 2

**Tasgetius, -ī m.:** Tasgetius, 3

**trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum:** to give over,  
hand down, pass down, 3

**Trēverī, -ōrum m.:** Treveri (Germanic), 4

**tumultus, -ūs m.:** uproar, tumult, confusion, 1

**vereor, -ērī, -ītus:** be afraid, fear; revere, 4

- 1 **erat...nātus**: plpf. nascor  
**in Carnūtibus**: *among the Carnutes*  
**summō locō**: *in the highest position*; i.e. status, abl. of quality  
**cuīus**: gen. sg. quī, quae, quod  
**māiōrēs**: *ancestors*; “greater (in birth),” comparative adj. of magnus, nom. subject  
**suā**: *their*; possessive reflexive adjective
- 2 **Huic**: *to this one*; dat. i.o. of restituerat  
**prō virtūtē...benevolentīā**: *(in return) for...*  
**eius**: *his*; i.e. Tasgetius’  
**in sē**: *toward him*; i.e. toward Caesar
- 3 **singulārī eius operā fuerat ūsus**: *there had been a need for his singular service*; ūsus est (here plpf.) just as opus est is idiomatic for “there is a need for” and governs an ablative, singulārī is i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. abl. with operā, which is 1<sup>st</sup> decl. and not from opus, operis
- 4 **māiōrum**: *of his ancestors*; see line 1  
**Tertium...annum**: *for...*; acc. of duration  
**inimicī**: nom. pl. subject
- 5 **multīs palam...auctōribus**: *many openly (being) promoters...*; abl. absolute, subject and pred., supply the missing pple “being”  
**ea**: *this*; demonstrative adj. with fem. sg. rēs
- 6 **veritus**: *having begun to fear*; inceptive pf. dep. pple vereor  
**quod...pertinēbat**: *because...*; i.e. the murder was not limited to one murderer but many  
**nē...dēficeret**: *that...*; nē is translated positively in this clause of fearing; impf. subj. in secondary seq. governed by veritus
- 7 **impulsū**: *because of their incitement*; “by the incitement” abl. of cause  
**Lucium Plancum**: acc. subject of proficīsi, hiemāre, and mittere, all governed by iubet
- 8 **quōrumque operā...hōs**: *and these by whose effort...*; the antecedent of the relative clause quōrum...interfectum comes after the clause; operā, as in line 3, is 1<sup>st</sup> decl. abl. sg.
- 9 **interfectum (esse)**: pf. pass. inf. in indirect disc. with Tasgetium as acc. subject  
**comprehēnsōs**: *arrested*
- 10 **certior factus est**: *he was informed*; “he was made more certain,” a common idiom, certior is a comparative adjective, predicate nom.; this construction governs indirect discourse
- 10 **perventum (esse)**: *that they had arrived*; this pf. passive infinitive in ind. disc is impersonal: “it has been arrived (by them)...” with the legates and quaestor as assumed agents; in translation, translate the pf. pass. as pf. active
- 11 **locum...mūnītum esse**: *that their positions were fortified*; plural, though each legate may have informed Caesar about his single position, there were collectively many different winter-camps set up  
**hibernīs**: *for winter-quarters*; dat. of purpose
- 12 **Diēbus...XV**: *within...*; abl. of time within  
**quibus**: *in which (days)*; abl. of time within  
**ventum est**: *they came*; “it has been come,” impersonal passive  
**repentīnī...dēfectiōnis**: subjective gen. of initium, which is nom. subj.
- 13 **ortum est**: pf. deponent orior  
**ab**: *from...*; abl. of origin, not abl. of agent
- 14 **regnī suī**: *of their kingdom*; gen. sg.  
**praestō fuissent**: *had been at hand for*; + dat. praestō is an adv. commonly found with a form of sum, here plpf. subj. in a cum-clause
- 15 **Indūtiomārī Trēverī**: *of Indutiomarus, one of the Treveri*; “of the Treverian Indutiomarus,” both are gen. sg. modifying abl. pl. nuntiīs  
**impulsī**: *having been incited*; nom. pl. modifies quī and governs preceding 3 words  
**suōs**: *their own (men)*
- 16 **subitō...lignātōribus**: abl. abs.  
**magnā manū**: *with a large body (of men)*; abl. of means  
**oppugnātum**: *to assault*; “to capture by assault,” supine in acc. sg. expresses purpose and may be translated as an infinitive
- 17 **nostrī**: *our (men)*  
**cēpissent**: plpf. subj. capiō
- 18 **ūnā ex parte**: *on one side*; “from one side”  
**Hispānīs...ēmissīs**: abl. absolute  
**equestrī proeliō**: *in an equestrian battle*; i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. adjective in abl. sg.  
**superiōrēs**: nom. pred. of plpf. subj. of sum
- 19 **dēsperātā rē**: abl. absolute  
**hostēs**: nom. subj.  
**suōs**: *their (men)*  
**ab**: *from...*; abl. of separation

### Quintus Titūrius Sabīnus and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta.

Caesar commonly calls the first legate by the cognomen **Sabīnus** (line 14) or nomen **Titūrius**. Keep in mind that these names identify one and the same person. In V.27.1, the same legatus is called Quintus Titūrius. Caesar identifies the second legate, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, almost always by the cognomen **Cotta**.

26.4 Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt utī aliquī ex nostrīs ad colloquium 1  
prōdīret: habēre sēsē, quae dē rē commūnī dicere vellent, quibus rēbus  
contrōversiās minuī posse spērārent.

27.1 Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā Gaius Arpīnēius, eques Rōmānus,  
familiāris Quintī Titūrī, et Quintus Iūnius ex Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante 5  
missū Caesaris ad Ambiorīgem ventitāre cōnsuērat; apud quōs Ambiorīx ad  
hunc modum locūtus est: 2. sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiīs plūrimum eī  
cōnfītērī debēre, quod eius operā stīpendiō liberātus esset, quod Aduatucīs,  
fīnitimīs suīs, pendere cōnsuēsset, quodque eī et fīlius et fratris fīlius ab  
Caesare remissī essent, quōs Aduatucī obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in 10  
servitūte et catēnīs tenuissent; 3. neque id, quod fēcērit de oppugnātiōne  
castrōrum, aut iūdicīō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū civitātis, suaque  
esse eiusmodī imperia, ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitūdō quam ipse  
in multitūdinem. 4. Cīvitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentināe  
Gallōrum conīūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā 15  
probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperītus rērum ut suīs copiīs populum  
Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfīdat. 5. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium:  
omnibus hibernīs Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō  
alterae legiōnī subsidiō venīre posset; 6. nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre  
potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūnī libertāte cōnsilium 20  
initum vidērētur.

**adeō:** to such a degree, such an extent, so, 1  
**ante:** before, in front of (acc); *adv.* before, 4  
**Arpineius, -i m.:** Arpineius, 2  
**beneficium, -i n.:** favor, benefit, kindness, 2  
**catena, -ae f.:** chain, fetter, shackle, 1  
**coactus, -ūs m.:** compulsion, coercion, 1  
**colloquium, -iī n.:** conversation, talk, 1  
**colloquor, -quī, -locūtum:** to converse, 4  
**conclamō (1):** cry out together, shout, 2  
**confidō, -ere, confisus sum:** trust, believe, rely upon, 4  
**confiteor, -ērī, -fessum:** admit, reveal, 1  
**coniūratiō, -ōnis f.:** pact, union, conspiracy 3  
**dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitum:** ought, owe 1  
**eiusmodī:** of this kind, such; so, 3  
**familiāris, -e:** of the family; close friend, 1  
**frāter, -tris m.:** brother, 2  
**Gaius, -i m.:** Gaius, 4  
**Hispania, -ae f.:** Spain, 2  
**humilitās, -tātis f.:** weakness, lowliness, 1  
**iam:** now, already, soon, 4  
**imperītus, a, um:** unskilled, inexperienced (gen), 2  
**iudicium, -iī n.:** decision, judgment; trial, 3  
**Iūnius, -i m.:** Junius, 2

**iūs, iūris n.:** justice, law, right, 2  
**liberō (1):** free, liberate, 3  
**libertās, -tātis f.:** freedom, liberation, 2  
**loquor, -i, locūtum:** speak, say, 2  
**minuō, -ere, minuī:** diminish, ebb, 2  
**missus, -ūs m.:** a sending, launching, 1  
**modus, i n.:** manner, form; measure, 4  
**mōs, mōris m.:** custom, manner, law, 4  
**negō (1):** to deny, say that...not, 2  
**opera, operae f.:** service, hard work, effort, 3  
**pendō, -ere, pependī, pensum:** pay, weigh 2  
**plūrimus, -a, -um:** most, very many, 4  
**porrō:** furthermore, further; long ago, far back, 1  
**praesertim:** especially, particularly, 2  
**prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itum:** advance, go forth, 1  
**quīdam, quaedam, quiddam:** a certain, 4  
**recuperō (1):** gain again, regain, recover, 1  
**remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** send back, 4  
**repentīnus, -a, -um:** sudden, unexpected, 4  
**servitūs, servitūtis, f.:** servitude, 2  
**stīpendium, -iī n.:** pay; military service, 1  
**ventitō (1):** to come often, resort to, 2  
**voluntās, -tātis f.:** will, wish, choice, 2

- 1 **suō mōre**: *according to their custom*; cf. I.4.1  
**utī aliquī...prōdiret**: *that someone go forth*; ut + impf. subj. prōdeō in an ind. command; aliquī is a nom. sg. indefinite adj., alternate to aliquis  
**nostrīs**: *our (men)*  
**ad**: *for...*; expressing purpose
- 2 **habēre sēsē**: *(and) that they had...*; either ind. discourse governed by conclāmāvērunt just as the ind. command or governed by a missing verb of speech: “(stating) that they had”  
**quae...vellent**: *(things) which...*; relative clause of characteristic, impf. subj. volō; the missing neut. plural antecedent is obj. of habēre  
**dē rē commūnī**: *about their common interests*; “about common affairs”
- 3 **quibus rēbus**: abl. of means within a relative clause of characteristic, impf. subj.
- 4 **contrōversiās**: acc. subject of inf. posse  
**minūi**: pres. passive inf.
- 5 **colloquendī**: *of discussing*; gerund, gen. obj. of causā  
**eques**: in apposition to Arpineius; Arpineius was an equestrian in rank, the term “eques” refers to his rank in society rather than his occupation as a horseman
- 6 **familiāris**: *a close friend*; nom. appositive  
**iam ante**: *already before*
- 7 **missū**: *at Caesar’s sending*; “by the sending of Caesar,” Caesar is a subjective gen.; abl. cause  
**ventitāre**: *to come often*; frequentative of veniō  
**apud quōs**: *among these*; i.e. to these men; English prefers a demonstrative to the relative  
**ad hunc modum**: *in this manner*; “according to this manner”
- 8 **locūtus est**: pf. deponent, loquor  
**sēsē...cōnfītērī debēre**: *that he confessed to owe*; not “ought to confess,” cōnfītērī is a dep. inf. in ind. discourse that extends at length through quod-clauses to tenuissent; in ind. disc. subordinate verbs not already subjunctive are made subjunctive  
**prō...beneficiis**: *(in return) for...*; prō + abl.  
**plūrimum eī**: acc. object and dat. i.o. of debēre
- 9 **quod...liberātus esset**: *because...*; plpf. subj. Ambiorix lists the reasons he is indebted to Caesar; the verbs are subj. because subordinate verbs in ind. discourse become subjunctive  
**stīpendiō**: *from...*; abl. of separation  
**quod...cōnsuē(vi)sset**: *which he had been accustomed*; plpf. subj. in a relative clause of characteristic, the antecedent is neuter stīpendiō
- 10 **quodque...remissī essent**: *and because...*; plpf. pass. subj., remittō, subordinate verbs in ind. discourse become subjunctive  
**eī**: *to him*; i.e. to Ambiorix, dat. indirect object
- 11 **quōs...tenuissent**: *whom...*; relative clause of characteristic, here with plpf. subj. teneō  
**obsidum numerō**: *in a group of hostages*; abl. place where or accompaniment  
**apud sē**: *among them*; i.e. among the Aduatuci
- 12 **neque id...fēcisse**: *and that (he) had not done it*; ind. discourse parallel to cōnfītērī in l. 8, reflexive sēsē in l. 7 is acc. subject; “id” is acc. d.o. and refers to Ambiorix’s assault  
**quod fēcirit**: *which...*; relative clause of characteristic with perfect subj. faciō
- 13 **iūdiō (suō), voluntāte suā**: abl. cause  
**coāctū civitātis**: *by the compulsion of the state*; abl. of cause  
**suaque...imperia, ut**: *and that his powers were of such a kind that...*; a result clause with impf. subj. in secondary sequence follows
- 14 **nōn minus...iūris...quam ipse**: *no less (of) authority...than he himself (had)*; minus is comparative adj. neut. acc. d.o., iūris is a partitive gen.; supply habēret after ipse  
**in**: *over*
- 15 **civitātī...hanc fuisse...**: *that to the state this...*; ind. discourse, hanc is acc. subj. with pf. inf. of sum; civitātī is a dat. of reference, i.e. from the viewpoint of the state  
**quod...potuerit**: *(namely) because...*; pf. subj. of possum, subjunctive because it is a subordinate verb in ind. discourse; the verb in direct disc. is subjunctive for alleged cause, the subject of potuerit is a missing civitās
- 16 **coniūrātiōnī**: dat. obj. of resistere  
**Id sē...posse**: *that he is able...*; ind. disc., id is acc. d.o. of probāre, sē is acc. subject  
**facile**: adverb of 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. facilis, facile
- 17 **quod...rērum**: *because...*  
**sit**: *he is*; Ambiorix is nom. subject  
**ut...cōnfidat**: *that...*; result clause, pres. subj.  
**suīs copiīs**: abl. means; Ambiorix’s troops  
**populum Rōmānum**: acc. subject of posse  
**sed esse**: *but that it is...*;
- 18 **omnibus...oppugnandīs**: *for assaulting...*; dat. purpose, employ a gerund-gerundive flip  
**dictum diem**: *the appointed day*; PPP dīcō  
**nē...posset**: *lest any legion...*; purpose clause
- 19 **alterae legiōnī subsidiō**: double dative (dat. of interest and dat. of purpose respectively)  
**Gallōs...potuisse**: *Gauls could not deny Gauls*
- 20 **cum...vidērētur**: *since...seemed*
- 21 **dē recuperandā...**: gerund-gerundive flip  
**initum (esse)**: *to have been entered*; pf. inf.

27.7 Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfēcerit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem officī 1  
 prō beneficiīs Caesaris: monēre, ōrāre Titūrium prō hospitiō, ut suae ac  
 mīlitum salūtī cōnsulat. 8. Magnam manum Germānōrum conductam  
 Rhēnum trānsisse; hanc adfore bīduō. 9. Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium velintne  
 priusquam finitimī sentiant ēductōs ex hibernīs mīlitēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut 5  
 ad Labiēnum dēducere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter quinquaginta,  
 alter paulō amplius ab eīs absit. 10. Illud sē pollicērī et iūreiūrāndō cōfirmāre  
 tūtum iter per finēs datūrum; 11. quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē cōnsulere,  
 quod hibernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō eius meritīs grātiā referre. Hāc  
 ōrātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorīx. 10

28.1 Arpinēius et Iūnius, quae audierunt, ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illī repentīnā  
 rē perturbātī, etsi ab hoste ea dīcēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda  
 exīstimābant maximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem ignōbilem  
 atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam  
 vix erat crēdendum. 2. Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt magnaue inter eōs 15  
 existit contrōversia. 3. Lucius Aurunculēius complūrēsque tribūnī mīlitum et  
 prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum neque ex hibernīs  
 iniūssū Caesaris discēdendum exīstimābant: quantāsvīs magnās etiam cōpiās  
 Germānōrum sustinērī posse mūnītīs hibernīs docēbant: rem esse testimōniō,  
 quod prīmum hostium impetum multīs ultrō vulneribus illātis fortissimē 20  
 sustinuerint: rē frumentāriā non premī; intereā et ex proximīs hibernīs et ā  
 Caesare conventūra subsidia: postrēmō quid esse levius aut turpius quam,  
 auctōre hoste, dē summīs rēbus capere cōnsilium?

**adsum, -esse, -fui:** be present, assist, (dat.), 3  
**agō, agere, ēgi, āctum:** drive, lead, do, 4  
**amplius, -a, -um:** ample, full, spacious, 2  
**Arpineius, -i m.:** Arpineius, 2  
**auctor, auctoris m.:** agent, doer, cause, 4  
**audeō, -ēre, ausus sum:** dare, venture, 4  
**audiō, -īre, -īvi, auditum:** to hear, listen to, 1  
**Aurunculeius, -i m.:** Aurunculeius, 2  
**beneficium, -i n.:** favor, benefit, kindness, 2  
**biduum, -i n.:** a period of two days, 2  
**centurio, -iōnis m.:** centurion, 4  
**condūcō, -ere:** bring together, gather, 2  
**cōnsulō, -ere, -sulū, sultum:** consult, consider, 3  
**credō, -ere, -didī, creditum:** believe, trust 1  
**dēducō, -ere:** lead or draw down or away, 3  
**discō, -ere, -didicī:** learn, get to know, 2  
**doceō, -ēre, -uī, -ctus:** teach, tell, 4  
**ēducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus:** lead out, 3  
**existō, -ere, -stifī, -stitum:** arise, appear, 1  
**frūmentārius, -a, -um:** full of grain, 2  
**grātia, -ae f.:** gratitude; favor, thanks, 2

**hospitium, -i n.:** hospitality; guest-host tie, 1  
**humilis, -e:** on the ground, low; humble, 1  
**ignōbilis, -e:** ignoble, obscure, unknown, 1  
**impetus, -ūs m.:** attack, onset, assault, 7  
**iniussū:** without orders, 1  
**intereā:** meanwhile, meantime, 3  
**Iūnius, -i m.:** Junius, 2  
**ius-iūrandum, iūrisiūrāndi n.:** sworn oath, 2  
**levīs, -e:** light, not heavy; unimportant, 1  
**levō (1):** lift up, relieve; make smooth, 1  
**meritum, -i n.:** service, merit, favor, 1  
**moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum:** to warn, advise, 2  
**muniō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum:** to fortify, build, 3  
**-ne:** whether (opens yes/no question), 1  
**neglegō, ere, -lēxī, neglēctum:** to neglect, 3  
**nunc:** now, at present, 2  
**officium, -iī, n.:** duty, obligation, 3  
**ōrō (1):** plead, pray (for), entreat, 2  
**pietās, -tātis f.:** piety, devotion, 1  
**polliceor, -cērī, -citus:** promise, offer, 2  
**postremō:** *at last, finally;* abl. as adv. 2

**priusquam**: before, earlier than, 1  
**quantusvis, -avis, -umvis**: however much, 1  
**quinquaginta**: fifty, 1  
**quoniam**: since, inasmuch as, seeing that, 1  
**referō, ferre, tulī, lātum**: report bring back 3  
**repentīnus, -a, -um**: sudden, unexpected, 4  
**satisfaciō, -ere, fecī, factum**: to do enough 1  
**sentiō, -īre, -sī, sēnsus**: to realize, feel, 3

**sponte**: willingly, voluntarily, 2  
**temere**: heedlessly, blindly, without cause, 1  
**testimonium, -ī n.**: witness, testimony, 1  
**tribūnus, -ī m.**: tribune, officer, 2  
**turpis, turpe**: ugly, shameful, 2  
**ultrō**: voluntarily; moreover, beyond, 3  
**vix**: with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 2  
**vulnus, -eris n.**: wound, blow, 3

- 1 **quibus...satisfecerit**: *Since he accomplished enough for these*; pf. subjunctive satisfaciō, use a demonstrative instead of relative pronoun  
**prō pietāte**: *out of devotion*; i.e. patriotism  
**habēre...sē**: *he had*  
**rationem officī**: *a regard for his duty*; “a calculation for,” objective genitive
- 2 **prō**: (*in return*) for...; + ablative  
**manēre, orāre...hospitiō**: (*he said*) *that he advised (and) that he pleaded with Titūrius on behalf of hospitality*; asyndeton, Ambiorix said  
**ut...cōnsulat**: *that...*; ind. command with pres. subj. governed by monēre and orāre
- 3 **salūtī**: *for his own and the soldiers' safety*; dat. of purpose, suae is a possessive adj. agreeing with salūtī while militum is a gen. plural  
**manum**: *body*; i.e. group, acc. subject
- 4 **trānsisse**: pf. inf. trānsēō in ind. discourse  
**hanc**: *this (body)*; supply manum, acc. subject  
**adfore**: *would be present*; alternative to the fut. inf. of adsum: adfutūrum esse  
**bīduō**: *in...*; abl. of time within  
**Ipsōrum...cōnsilium, velintne**: *that it is the consideration (of the Romans) themselves whether they are willing...*; ind. question with the pres. subjunctive of volō
- 5 **priusquam...sentiant**: i.e. before the Gauls find out  
**ēductōs...militēs**: acc. d.o. of dēdūcere
- 6 **dēdūcere**: complementary inf. of velint  
**quōrum alter..alter**: *of whom one...the other*; i.e. Cicero and Labiēnus; partitive genitive  
**mīlia passuum**: *for...miles*; “thousands of paces,” acc. of extent; add “ab eīs absit”
- 7 **paulō**: *a little*; “by a little,” abl. of degree of difference with comparative adv. of amplius  
**ab eīs**: *from them*; i.e. from Titūrius' troops  
**absit**: *is away*; pres. subj. subordinate verb in indirect discourse  
**Illud...tūtum iter...datūrum (esse)**: *that... (namely) that (he)*; illud is acc. d.o. of pollicērī and cōnfīrmāre, “tūtum...datūrum (esse)” is in apposition to illud; datūrum esse is fut. inf. dō
- sē pollicērī**: *that he promised...*; deponent inf.  
**iūre-iūrandō**: often as two words; abl. means
- 8 **quod**: *this*; i.e. removing Titūrius' troops and advising Titūrius on flight; translate the relative as a demonstrative, acc. object of faciat  
**et...et**: *both...and*
- 9 **et cīvitatī sēsē cōnsulere**: *both that he was consulting the state*; cīvitatī is dat. obj.  
**quod hibernīs levētur**: *because (the state) is relieved from the winter-quarters*; i.e. from supplying the Romans with grain for winter  
**et...referre**: *and he returned...*; Ambiorix is able to be loyal to the Gauls and to Caesar
- 10 **Hāc...habitā**: abl. absolute  
**quae**: *the things (which)*; or “what,” the missing antecedent is obj. of dēferunt  
**audī(v)erunt**: syncopated pf. 3<sup>rd</sup> pl.
- 11 **etsī**: *even if, although*; the clause is concessive  
**ea**: *they*; “those things,” neuter plural
- 12 **(ea) nōn neglegenda (esse)**: *that they must not be neglected*; passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum); supply esse to form the infinitive
- 13 **suā sponte**: *by its own will*
- 14 **populō Rōmānō**: (*against*) *the Roman people*  
**ausam (esse)**: *had dared*; pf. deponent inf. of semi-deponent audeō, audēre, ausus sum; the acc. subj. is fem. cīvitatē
- 15 **erat crēdendum**: *was to be believed*; the subj. is “cīvitatē...ausam (esse);” passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) as in line 12  
**cōnsilium**: *council*; i.e. discussion in assembly
- 17 **nihil...agendum (esse)**: passive periphrastic, see note for line 15 above  
**discedendum (esse)**: *that (they) must not depart*; “it must not be departed,” see line 12
- 19 **rem esse testimōniō**: *that the matter served as evidence*; “was for evidence” dat. of purpose
- 20 **quod**: *namely because...*; in apposition to rem
- 21 **rē frūmentāriā**: *by the grain supply*; means
- 22 **conventūra (esse)**: *would convene*; fut. inf.
- 23 **turpius**: *more shameful than...*; comparison  
**auctōre hoste**: *enemy being author*; absolute  
**capere cōnsilium**: *to adopt a plan*; idiom

29.1 Contrā ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum māiōrēs manūs 1  
 hostium adiūctīs Germānīs convēnissent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in  
 proximīs hībernīs esset acceptum. Brevem cōsulendī esse occāsionem.  
 Caesarem arbitrārī profectum in Ītaliā; 2. neque aliter Carnūtēs interficiendī  
 Tasgetī cōsiliū fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā 5  
 contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs esse. 3. Nōn hostem auctōrem, sed  
 rem spectāre: subesse Rhēnum; magnō esse Germānīs dolōrī Ariovistī  
 mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; 4. ārdere Galliam, tot contumēliīs  
 acceptīs sub populī Rōmānī imperiū redāctam, superiōre glōriā reī militāris  
 exstīctā. 5. Postrēmō quis hoc sibi persuādēret, sine certā rē Ambiorīgem ad 10  
 eiusmodī cōsiliū dēscendisse? 6. Suam sententiam in utramque partem  
 esse tūtā: sī nihil esset dūrius, nullō cum perīculō ad proximam legiōnem  
 perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōsentīret, ūnam esse in  
 celeritāte positā salutē. 7. Cottae quidem atque eōrum, quī dissentīrent,  
 cōsiliū quem habēre exitum, in quō sī praesēns perīculum nōn, at certē 15  
 longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset timenda?

**adiungō, -ere, iunxī, iunctum:** join, attach, 1  
**adsum, -esse, -fuī:** be present, assist, (dat.), 3  
**aliter:** otherwise, 2  
**ardeō, -ēre, arsi, arsum:** burn, be eager, 1  
**Ariovistus, -ī m.:** (leader of the Germans) 1  
**auctor, auctoris m.:** agent, doer, cause, 4  
**brevis, -e:** short, 3  
**Carnūtēs, -um:** Carnutes, 4  
**clāmitō (1):** to cry violently or repeatedly, 1  
**consentiō, -īre, sensi:** to agree, assent, 1  
**cōsulō, -ere, -suluī, sultum:** consult, 3  
**contemptio, -tiōnis f.:** scorn, disdain, 1  
**contrā:** opposite, facing (acc.), 2  
**contumēlia, -ae f.:** outrage, insult; violence, 1  
**dēscendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus:** descend, 1  
**dissentiō, -īre, sensi:** to disagree, oppose, 1  
**dolor, -ōris m.:** pain, grief, anger, passion, 2  
**dūrus, -a, -um:** hard(y), harsh, stern, 1  
**eiusmodī:** of this kind, such; so, 3  
**exitus, -ūs m.:** going out, exit, result, issue, 1

**extinguō, -ere, -stinxi, -stinctum:** put out,  
 snuff out, extinguish, 1  
**famēs, -is f.:** hunger, 2  
**glōria, -ae, f.:** glory, fame, 2  
**Ītalia, -ae f.:** Italy, 1  
**longinquus, -a, -um;** far, distant, remote, 2  
**militāris, -e:** military, of a soldier, 1  
**obsidio, -iōnis f.:** seige, blockade, 2  
**occāsio, -iōnis f.:** opportunity, occasion, 2  
**postremō,:** *at last, finally*; abl. as adv. 2  
**praesēns, -ntis:** present, instant, 1  
**redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -actum:** to bring back, 1  
**sententia, -ae f.:** opinion, purpose, 2  
**sērō:** late, too late, 1  
**spectō (1):** watch, observe, behold, inspect, 3  
**subsum, -esse, -fuī:** to be near, close at hand, 1  
**Tasgetius, -ī m.:** Tasgetius, 3  
**timeō, -ēre, timuī:** to be afraid, be scared, 1  
**tot:** so many, 2

- 1 **contrā ea:** *in reply to these things*; “against  
**clāmitābat:** *kept shouting*; frequentative impf.  
**sērō factūrōs (esse):** *that (the Romans)*  
*would...;* ind. disc. with fut. inf., add acc. subj.  
**cum...convēnissent:** *after...;* plpf. subjunctive  
**māiōrēs:** comp. adj. of magnus with manūs  
**manūs:** *bodies*; i.e. groups of troops, nom. pl.
- 2 **adiūctīs Germānīs:** abl. absolute  
**cum...esset acceptum:** *after...;* plpf. pass.  
**aliquid calamitātis:** *some calamity*; neut. nom.  
subject; “something of calamity”
- 3 **Brevem...occāsiōnem:** *that...;* occāsiōnem is  
acc. subj. but the predicate brevem is placed  
first in the clause for emphasis  
**cōnsulendī:** gerund (-ing), with occāsiōnem
- 4 **arbitārī:** *that (he) thought*; add sē (Titūrius) as  
acc. subject; pres. dep. inf. of arbitror  
**Caesarem...profectum (esse):** *that Caesar*;  
pf. dep. inf. proficīscor, governed by arbitrarī
- 5 **interficiendī Tasgetī:** *of killing Tasgetius*; gen.  
sg. gerundive modifying gen. Tasgetius, which  
through a gerund-gerundive flip is translated as  
a gerund and acc. object  
**cōnsilium...captūrōs:** cōnsilium capere is  
an idiom: “to adopt an argument”  
**fuisse captūrōs:** *would have adopted*; pf. inf.  
sum + fut. pple capiō; in direct discourse this  
would be cēpissent, an apodosis in a mixed  
contrary-to-fact condition; parallel with  
ventūrōs esse, it complementing the protasis  
sī...adesset below; see page 61  
**neque Eburōnēs:** acc. subj. with ventūrōs esse
- 6 **sī...adesset:** *if that one were present*; i.e.  
Caesar, impf. subjunctive adsum, in direct disc.  
a protasis in a mixed contrary-to-fact condition  
with fuisse captūrōs and ventūrōs esse; cf. p. 61  
**nostrī:** *for us*; nostrī is gen. sg. of the personal  
pronoun nōs; this gen. is an objective gen.  
modifying contemptiōne  
**ventūrōs esse:** *would come*; fut. inf. (fut. pple +  
inf. of sum); in direct discourse it would be  
venīrent, an apodosis in a pres. contrary-to-fact  
condition with sī...adesset above; parallel to  
the 1<sup>st</sup> apodosis fuisse captūrōs, see note, p. 61  
**Nōn hostem...spectāre:** *that (he) saw not the*  
*enemy but the situation (as) the authority*; add  
sē as acc. subj.; spectāre governs a double acc.  
where auctōrem is an acc. predicate
- 7 **subesse Rhēnum:** Rhēnum is acc. subj.  
**magnō....dolōrī:** *served as great grief for the*  
*Germans*; “was for great grief for the  
Germans,” double dative construction: “magnō  
dolōrī” is dat. of purpose and “Germānīs” is  
dat. of interest
- 8 **Ariovistī mortem...victōriās:** subject of esse
- 9 **ārdēre:** *that Gaul is on fire*; “is eager (to act),”  
fire is a common metaphor for passion, in this  
case, feelings of anger and indignation  
**tot...acceptīs:** abl. absolute  
**sub...imperium:** *underneath...;* sub governs an  
abl. place where or as here acc. place to which  
**redactam:** PPP redigō, modifying Galliam  
**superiōre...exstinctā:** abl. absolute  
**reī militāris:** *of military affairs*; with glōria
- 10 **quis...persuādēret** *who would persuade*  
*himself this*; in dir. discourse a deliberative  
pres. subjunctive, but in ind. discourse  
secondary sequence it is impf. subj.  
**sine certā...dēscendisse:** (*namely*) *that...;* ind.  
disc. in apposition to neuter acc. sg. hoc above  
**sine certā rē:** *without a reliable reason*
- 11 **dēscendisse:** *had lowered himself*; pf. inf.  
Ambiorix is acting unbecoming of his status  
**Suam sententiam...:** *that his opinion...;*  
i.e. Ambiorix’s opinion; Sabinus is still  
employing Ambiorix as subject  
**in utramque partem:** *on each side*
- 12 **sī...esset...perventūrōs (esse):** *If...was...;*  
*would arrive*; in dir. discourse a fut. more  
vivid (sī erit, pervenient); in ind. disc. in  
secondary seq. the protasis is impf. subj. and  
the apodosis a fut. inf., see grammar box, p. 59  
**dūrius:** neut. sg. comparative adj., nom. pred.
- 13 **sī...cōnsentiret, esse positam:** *if...agreed,*  
*had been placed...;* in dir. disc., mixed simple  
condition (sī cōnsentit, posita est); in ind. disc.  
in secondary sequence the subordinate verb  
becomes impf. subj. and the main verb pf.  
pass. inf. (which we translate as plpf. in  
secondary sequence); see the box, p. 59
- 14 **ūnam...salūtem:** *a single (means of) safety*  
**Cottae atque eōrum:** gen. modifying  
cōnsilium, the acc. subject of habēre
- 15 **quī dissentirent:** i.e. those who disagree with  
Titūrius; relative of characteristic; impf. subj.  
**quem...exitium:** *what outcome does the*  
*plan...?;* interrog. adj. and noun introducing a  
question; acc. d.o. of habēre in ind. disc.  
**in quō:** *in which...;* the cōnsilium of Cotta and  
others opposing Titūrius is the antecedent
- 16 **perīculum:** (*there was*)...*danger*; add esset  
**longinquā obsidiōne:** *with...;* abl. of cause  
**esset timenda:** *had to be feared*; “was going  
to be feared” passive periphrastic (gerundive +  
impf. subj. of sum) expressing necessity

30.1 Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā prīmisque 1  
 ōrdinibus ācritē resisterēt, ‘Vincite,’ inquit, ‘sī ita vultis,’ Sabinus, et id  
 clāriōre vōce, ut magna pars mīlitum exaudīret; 2. ‘neque is sum,’ inquit, ‘quī  
 gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis perīculō terreat: hī sapient; sī gravius quid  
 acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposit; 3. quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum 5  
 proximīs hībernīs coniūctī commūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant,  
 nōn, reiectī et relēgātī longē ab cēterīs, aut ferrō aut fame intereant.’

31.1 Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant nē suā  
 dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum perīculum dēdūcant: 2. facilem esse  
 rem, seu maneant, seu proficiāntur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac 10  
 probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere. Rēs disputātiōne  
 ad mediam noctem perducitur. 3. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs:  
 superat sententia Sabīnī. Prōnūntiātur primā lūce itūrōs. 4. Cōnsūmitur  
 vigiliīs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret, quid sēcum  
 portāre posset, quid ex īnstrūmentō hībernōrum relinquere cōgerētur. 5. 15  
 Omnia excogitantur, quārē nec sine perīculō maneātur et languōre mīlitum  
 et vigiliīs perīculum augeātur. 6. Prīmā lūce sīc ex castrīs proficiāntur, ut  
 quibus esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimo Ambiorige  
 cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine maximisque impedīmentīs.

**ācritē:** sharply, fiercely, 2

**agmen, agminis n.:** column, battle line, formation, 3

**amīcus, -a, -um:** friendly, 1

**augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum:** increase, enlarge 1

**cēterī, -ae, -a:** the remaining, rest, others, 1

**circumspicō, -ere:** look around, consider, 1

**clārus, a, um:** clear; famous, distinguished 1

**comprehendō, -ere, -dī:** seize, arrest; grasp 4

**coniungō, -ere, -jūnxī, -junctus:** join, 1

**consumō, -ere, -sumpsī:** to use up, spend, 2

**consurgō, -ere, -surrexī:** rise up (together), 1

**contrā:** opposite, facing (acc.), 2

**dēdūcō, -ere:** lead or draw down or away, 3

**disputatio, -tiōnis f.:** disagreement, debate 2

**dissensio, -siōnis f.:** conflict, dissension, 2

**eō, ire, ivī:** to go, come, 4

**exaudiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum:** hear out, listen to 1

**excogitō (1):** think out, devise, contrive, 1

**famēs, -is f.:** hunger, 2

**ferrum, -ī n.:** iron; sword; tool, 1

**inquam:** say, 4

**instrumentum, -ī n.:** tool, implement; stock, 1

**intereō, -ire, -ivī, -itum:** to die, perish, 3

**languor, -ōris m.:** fatigue, weariness, sluggishness, 1

**lūx, lūcis, f.:** light, 3

**manēō, -ēre, -sī, mānsus:** remain, await 2

**medius -a -um:** in the middle of, 3

**modo:** only, merely, simply; just now, 4

**nec:** and not, nor (nec, nec = neither, nor) 2

**ōrō (1):** plead, pray (for), entreat, 2

**perducō, -ere, dūxī, ductum:** to draw out, 1

**perendinus, a, um:** of day after tomorrow, 1

**perspicō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum:** perceive, 1

**pertinācia, -ae f.:** stubbornness, obstinacy, 1

**portō (1):** carry, bear, bring, 2

**prōnūntiō (1):** to proclaim, speak forth, 4

**quārē:** wherefore, therefore, why, 1

**reiciō, -ere, -ieci, -iectum:** cast off or back, 1

**relēgō (1):** to send away, remove, 1

**repscō, -ere:** to ask back again, demand, 1

**sapiō, -ere, sapivī:** to taste; discern, think, 1

**sententia, -ae f.:** opinion, purpose, 2

**sentio, -ire, -sī, sēsum:** to feel, realize, 3

**sīc:** thus, in this way, 3

**sive, seu:** whether, or (if), 2

**tandem:** finally, at last, at length, 2

**terreō, -ēre, terruī, territum:** to terrify, 2

**vigilia, -ae f.:** watch (1/4 period of night), 3

**vincō, -ere, vicī, victum:** conquer, defeat, 1

**vōs:** you (all), 1

**vōx, vōcis, f.:** voice; utterance, word, 4

- 1 **hāc...habitā**: ablative absolute  
**in utramque partem**: *on each side*  
**prīmisque ōrdinibus**: *and the first ranks*; i.e. centurions
- 2 **resisterētur**: (*Sabinus*) *was resisted*; impf. pass. subjunctive; *cum* is likely causal in sense  
**Vincite**: *Prevail*; i.e. win the dispute  
**vultis**: 2<sup>nd</sup> pl. present volō  
**id clārīore vōce**: *and (he said) it with a rather loud voice*; supply *inquit*, ablative of manner loses “*cum*” when there is an adjective, here a comparative adjective
- 3 **ut...exaudirent**: *so that...*; purpose clause with impf. subj., secondary sequence  
**is...quī**: *one who...*; pred. nom., relative clause of characteristic with present subjunctive  
**gravissimē**: superlative adverb
- 4 **ex vōbis**: *by you*; i.e. “danger (heard) from you,” abl. source  
**hī**: *these (soldiers)*; i.e. at the meeting  
**sapient**: *will know*; future tense  
**gravius quid**: *anything more serious*; *quid* is indefinite after *sī*
- 5 **sī...acciderit, poscent**: *happens...will demand*; future more vivid (*sī* fut. pf., fut.), see, p. 59  
**quī**: (*and these*) *who*  
**sī...liceat, sustineat...nōn...intereant**: *should be allowed... would endure...would not perish*; future less vivid (*sī* + pres. subj., pres. subj.), *licet*, *sustineō*, and *intereō*; see box, p. 61  
**per tē**: *by you*; “through you”  
**perendinō diē**: *on...*; abl. time when
- 6 **hībernīs**: *winter-quarters*; throughout this episode *hīberna* denotes a winter camp  
**commūnem...bellī cāsū**: *bellī* is a genitive of description modifying *cāsū*
- 7 **nōn...intereant**: *would not die*; *nōn* modifies the finite verb, pres. subj. *intereō*
- 8 **cōsurgitur**: *they rise from council*; “it is arisen (by them) from the council,” impersonal passive governs a dat. of agent, here missing) and is often translated in the active, see p. 57  
**comprehendunt utrumque**: *they detain both*; i.e. the centurions stop *Sabinus* and *Cotta*  
**ōrant nē**: *plead that...not*; negative ind. command governs pres. subj. in primary seq.
- 9 **facilem esse rem**: (*and*) *that the matter*; ind. disc. governed by *ōrant*, asyndeton, add “*et*”
- 10 **seu...seu**: *whether...or*; *sīve...sīve*, introduces and indirect question with present subjunctives  
**sī modo**: *provided that...*; “if only,” a proviso clause governs a present subjunctive  
**contrā**: *on the other hand*
- 11 **nūllam sē salūtem perspicere**: *that they...*; *sē* is acc. subj., *nūllam salūtem* is acc. d.o. in indirect discourse governed by *ōrant* and parallel to “*facilem esse rem*” above  
**Rēs**: *the matter*; i.e. the discussions
- 12 **dat manūs**: *gives his hands*; i.e. surrenders
- 13 **sententia**: *the opinion*  
**primā lūce**: abl. of time when  
**(eōs) itūrōs (esse)**: *that they...*; fut. inf. *eō*, *īre*
- 14 **vigiliīs**: *with night-watches*  
**sua...circumspiceret**: *looks over his own things*; i.e. inspects equipment, gear, property  
**quisque**: *each...*; an adjective modifying *mīles*  
**quid...posset**: *what he was able...*; impf. subj. possum in indirect question; with *sua*, this construction is an example of *prolepsis* (anticipation): “his things what he was able...” is equivalent to “what things he was able”
- 15 **quid...cōgerētur**: (*and*) *what he was forced*; ind. question parallel to the one above  
**ex instrūmentō**: *from the store, from the stock*; i.e. from the inventory
- 16 **quārē...maneātur...augeātur**: *for what reason they would remain not without danger and danger would be increased both by the fatigue and night-watches of the soldiers*; ind. question in apposition to *omnia*, the pres. subjunctive is potential subjunctive
- 17 **Prīma lūce**: *at...*; abl. time when  
**castrīs**: *the camp*; *castra* is plural in form but singular in translation  
**ut...cōnsilium datum (esse)**: *as (if men) who had been persuaded that the plan had been given (to them) not by an enemy but by a man most friendly, Ambiorix*; *ut* here is equivalent to “*ut sī*,” which introduces a conditional sentence of comparison with the subjunctive (*apodosis* is missing); plpf. pass. subj. of *persuādeō* is used impersonally (common in verbs governing a dative), the dat. obj. *quibus* may be translated as subject; *dātum (esse)* is a pf. pass. inf. in an acc. + inf. construction that is subject of *persuāsum esset*. An alternative translation is “as if (men) who had been persuaded by *Ambiorix* not as an enemy but as a man most friendly (to them)”
- 19 **longissimō agmine maximīs impedimentīs**: ablative absolutes; add pple “being” for each

32.1 At hostēs, posteāquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliīsque dē profectiōne 1  
 eōrum sensērunt, collocātis īnsidiīs bipertītō in silvīs, opportunō atque  
 occultō locō, ā mīlibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum  
 exspectābant 2. et, cum sē maior pars agminis in magnam convallem  
 dēmīssisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque 5  
 premere et p̄mōs prohibēre ascensū atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium  
 committere coepērunt.

33.1 Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante provīdisset, trepidāre et  
 concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum  
 omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque eīs accidere cōnsuēvit, quī in ipsō 10  
 negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. 2. At Cotta, quī cōgitāisset haec posse in  
 itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor non fuisset, nūllā in  
 rē commūnī salūtī dēerat, et in appellandīs cohortandīsque mīlitibus  
 imperātōris et in pugnā mīlitis officia praestābat. 3. Cum propter  
 longitūdinem agminis minus facile omnia per sē obīre et, quid quōque locō 15  
 faciendum esset, prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiāre, ut impedīmenta  
 relinquerent atque in orbem cōsisterent. 4. Quod cōnsilium etsī in eiusmodī  
 cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē accidit:

**agmen, agminis n.:** column, battle line, formation, 3  
**ante:** before, in front of (acc); *adv.* before, 4  
**ascensus, -ūs m.:** ascent, climb, 1  
**auctor, auctoris m.:** agent, doer, cause, 4  
**bipertītō:** in two parts, 1  
**coepī, coepisse, coeptum:** to begin, 9  
**cogitō (1):** to think, ponder, turn over, 1  
**cohortor, -ārī, cohortātum:** urge on, incite 3  
**collocō (1):** place together, gather, arrange, 4  
**committō, -ere:** commence, commit, entrust 4  
**concurso (1):** to run about, rush about, 1  
**consistō, -ere, -stifī:** to stand (still), stop 2  
**convallis, -is m.:** valley, deep lowland, 1  
**dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** fail, give out on, 3  
**dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** drop, sink, 1  
**dēmum:** at length, finally, 1  
**dispōnō, -ere:** to arrange distribute, 1  
**eiusmodī:** of this kind, such; so, 3  
**exspectō (1):** look out for, wait for, await, 3  
**fremitus, -ūs m.:** roaring, murmuring, 1  
**imperātōr, -oris m.:** commander, leader, 2  
**incommodus, -a, -um:** unfortunate, disastrous, 3

**inīquus, -a, -um:** uneven, unequal, not fair, 1  
**insidiae, -ārum, f.:** ambush, plot, trap, 2  
**longitūdo, -inis f.:** length, width, 2  
**negōtium, īī n.:** business, task, 2  
**nocturnus, -a, -um:** nocturnal, nightly, 3  
**novus, -a, -um:** new, fresh, young, recent, 2  
**obeō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum:** go to meet, attend to, 1  
**occultō (1):** hide, conceal, 3  
**officium, -īī, n.:** duty, obligation, 3  
**opportūnus, -a, -um:** fit, suitable, useful, 2  
**orbis, -is m.:** sphere, circle (+ terrae: world), 2  
**ostendō, -ere, -ī, ntus:** show, promise, 2  
**posteāquam:** after (+ indicative), 1  
**prōnūntiō (1):** speak forth or in advance, 4  
**prōvideō, -ēre, -vidī, -visum:** to foresee, take  
 precautions, prepare for 3  
**reprehendō, -ere, -dī:** blame; hold back, 1  
**sentīō, -īre, -sī, sēnsū:** to feel, realize, 3  
**silva, -ae f.:** wood, forest, woodland, 4  
**timidus, -a, -um:** fearful, shy, 1  
**trepidō (1):** be agitated, be in confusion, 1  
**vigilia, -ae f.:** watch (1/4 period of night), 3

- 1 **ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliisque:** *from the roar at night and the night-watches*; i.e. the Roman soldiers had not settled down but instead stayed awake and made much noise  
**sensērunt:** *they realized*
- 2 **collocātis insidiis:** abl. absolute  
**bipertitō:** *in two parts*; adverb  
**opportūnō...locō:** *in...;* abl. place where in apposition to *in silvīs*
- 3 **ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus:** *about two miles away*; “from about two thousand of paces,” partitive genitive;
- 4 **maior pars agminis:** i.e. the Romans  
**cum...dēmīssisset:** *when...had dropped*; plpf. subjunctive
- 5 **ex utraq̄ue parte:** *on both sides*; “from each side”  
**eius vallis:** *of this valley*; eius is demonstrative  
**nōvissimōs:** *the rear (soldiers)*; the “most recent” soldiers are the “last” or “rear” soldiers in a column of soldiers, the enemy is attacking the rear and front of the battle column
- 6 **premere, prohibēre, committere:** all of the infinitives are governed by *coepērunt*  
**prīmōs:** *first (soldiers)*; the front of the column  
**ascensū:** *from...;* abl. of separation  
**inīquissimō nostrīs locō:** *(in) a place most unfair to our (men)*; place where, superlative  
**proelium committere:** *commence battle*; idiom
- 8 **tum dēmum:** *then at last*  
**Titūrius:** *Sabinus*; Quintus Titūrius Sabinus  
**quī...provīdisset:** *since he had foreseen nothing beforehand*; “who had foreseen nothing beforehand,” *quī* + plpf subjunctive is a relative clause causal in sense, equivalent to a cum-clause (*quī* = cum is) causal in sense; cf. l. 11  
**trepidāre, concursāre, dispōnere:** historical infinitives with nom. Titūrius as subject, translate all three in the 3<sup>rd</sup> sg. imperfect; at times used to give a rapid sequence of events
- 9 **haec ipsa:** *(he did) these very things*; neuter pl. acc., supply a verb  
**ut...omnia...vidērentur:** *so that all (his wits) seemed*; a result clause, *omnia* is subject; *videor* is frequently translated as “seem;” the word “omnia” pertains to his internal turmoil  
**eum:** *him*; i.e. Titūrius, object of *dēficere*
- 10 **quod...cōnsuevit:** *which was accustomed*  
**eīs:** *to those*; dat. of interest with *accidere*
- 11 **cōnsilium capere:** *to adopt a plan*; idiom  
**quī cōgitāset...fuisset:** *since he had realized...and had been*; “who had realized...” just as above *quī* + plpf. subjunctives in a relative clause causal in sense, equivalent to a cum-clause (*quī* = cum is) causal in sense  
**haec posse:** *that these things...;* neut. pl. acc. subject of inf. of *possum*
- 12 **ob eam causam:** *for this reason*; “on account of this reason”  
**fuisset:** pluperfect subjunctive of *sum*  
**nūllā in rē:** *in nūllā rē*; order emphasizes adj.
- 13 **commūnī salūtī:** dat. object of impf. *dēsum*  
**in appellandīs cohortandisque militibus:** both are gerundives modifying *militibus*, use a gerund-gerundive flip
- 14 **(officia) imperātōris:** add “officia;” there is a contrast between the *officia imperātōris* and *officia militis*  
**praestābat:** *performed*
- 15 **minus:** *less*; comparative adv. modifies *facile*  
**facile:** *easily*; irregular adv. of *facilis*, *facile*  
**omnia...obire:** *to attend to everything*  
**quōque:** *in each...;* abl. place where, *quisque*
- 16 **faciendum esset:** *had to be done*; “was going to be done,” gerundive + *sum* (here, impf. subj.) is a pass. periphrastic expressing necessity; subjunctive in an ind. question  
**possent:** *they were able*; Cotta and Titūrius  
**prōnūntiāre:** *that (the centurions) command...;* + indirect command  
**ut...cōnsisterent:** ind. command, impf. subj.
- 17 **in orbem:** *in a circle*; so that all soldiers have their backs to one another and fight forward  
**Quod:** *this...;* “which” translate the relative adj. as a demonstrative adj. with *cōnsilium*
- 18 **reprehendendum nōn est:** *must not be blamed*; gerundive + *sum* is a pass. periphrastic expressing necessity or obligation  
**incommodē:** *unadvantageously, disastrously*

## Cum-Clauses

<b>Cum haec verba audīvit</b>	1. temporal	<i>When he heard these words</i>
<b>Cum haec verba audīvisset</b>	2. circumstantial	<i>When/After he had heard these words</i>
	3. causal	<i>Since/Because he had heard these words</i>
	4. concessive	<i>Although he had heard these words</i>

33.5 nam et nostrīs mīlitibus spem minuit et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs 1  
effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur.  
Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat, ut vulgō mīlitēs ab signīs  
discēderent, quae quisque eōrum cārissima habēret, ab impedīmentīs petere  
atque arripere properāret, clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur. 5

34.1 At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē  
prōnūntiāre iussērunt, nē quis ab locō discēderet: illōrum esse praedam atque  
illīs reservārī quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent: proinde omnia in victōriā  
posita existīmārent. 2. Erant et virtūte et studiō pugnantī parēs; nostrī,  
tametsī ab duce et ā Fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in 10  
virtūte ponēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus  
numerus hostium cadēbat. 3. Quā rē animadversā, Ambiorix prōnūntiārī  
iubet, ut procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant et, quam in partem  
Rōmānī impetum fēcerint, cēdant (levitāte armōrum et cōtidiānā  
exercitātiōne nihil eīs nocērī posse), 4. rūsus sē ad signa recipientēs 15  
īnsequantur.

35.1 Quō praeceptō ab eīs dīligentissimē observātō, cum quaequam cohors  
ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant.  
2. Interim eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipī.

**aciēs, -ēi f.:** sharp edge, battle line, army, 2  
**alacer, alacris, alacre:** eager, spirited, 1  
**aperiō, -īre, -uī, -ertus:** open, disclose, 3  
**arripiō, -ere, -ripuī:** to grab, snatch, lay hold of, 1  
**cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsūrum:** to fall, 1  
**cārus, -a, -um:** dear, precious, costly, 1  
**cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus:** withdraw, move, 2  
**clāmōr, clāmōris m.:** shout, cry, 2  
**complēō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum:** fill up, fill, 6  
**cotidiānus, -a, -um:** daily, of every day, 3  
**dēsero, -ere, -ruī:** desert, forsake, abandon, 1  
**dēspērātiō, -tiōnis f.:** hopelessness, despair 1  
**diligēns, -entis:** careful, diligent, accurate, 2  
**dux, ducis m./f.:** leader, guide, chief, 4  
**excēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum:** go out, 3  
**exercitātiō, -iōnis f.:** training, practice, 2  
**fiō, fierī, factus:** become, be made, 3  
**flētus, -ūs m.:** weeping, wailing, 1  
**fortūna, -ae f.:** fortune, chance, luck, 4  
**impetus, -ūs m.:** attack, onset, assault, 7  
**insequor, -sequī, -secūtus:** follow, ensue, 1  
**latus, -eris n.:** side, flank, 2  
**levitās, -tātis f.:** lightness; inconstancy, 1  
**minuō, -ere, minuī:** to diminish, ebb, 2  
**necesse:** necessary; (it is) necessary, 4  
**nēvē, neu:** or not, and not, nor, 2

**noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum:** harm, injure, hurt, 2  
**nudō (1):** to make naked or bare, uncover, 1  
**observō (1):** watch, observe, attend to, 2  
**orbis, -is m.:** sphere, (+ terrae: world), 2  
**pār, paris:** equal, similar, even, 2  
**praecipio, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** receive in  
advance, instruct, admonish, 2  
**praeda, -ae f.:** loot, spoils, cattle, 2  
**praetereā:** besides, hereafter, 2  
**procul:** far, from a distance, from afar, 3  
**prōcurrō, ere, currī, cursum:** run forward, 2  
**proinde:** then, therefore, consequently, 1  
**prōnūntiō (1):** speak forth or in advance, 4  
**properō (1):** to hasten, complete quickly, 1  
**proprius:** more closely, nearer, 3  
**quicumque, quae-, quod-:** whosoever, 4  
**quispiam, quae-, quod-:** anyone, anything (adj. any), 2  
**quotiens:** as often as, how often?, 1  
**refugio, -ere, -fūgī:** to flee back, run back, 1  
**reservō (1):** lay up, save up, reserve, 1  
**rursus:** again, backward, back, 4  
**studium, -ī n.:** zeal, enthusiasm, pursuit, 3  
**tametsi:** even if, although, though, 1  
**timor, -oris m.:** fear, dread, anxiety, 2  
**vēlox, vēlōcis adj.:** swift, rapid, quick, 1  
**vulgus, -ī n.:** mass, mob, multitude, 2

- 1 **nostris militibus**: *for our soldiers*; dat. interest  
**alacriores**: comparative adjective
- 2 **effecit**: *made (x) (y)*; double acc., *alacriores* is in the predicative position  
**quod**: *because*  
**factum (esse)**: pf. pass. inf. following *videbatur*  
**videbatur**: *seemed*; impf. pass.
- 3 **accidit**: *it happened*; governs the noun result clause *ut...complērentur*  
**quod fieri...erat**: (*which it was necessary to happen*); parenthetical, inf. *fiō*  
**vulgō**: *commonly, generally*; abl. as adverb  
**signis**: *the standards*; i.e. military standards
- 4 **haberet**: *considered*; “held,” impf. subj. in a relative clause of characteristic, governs a double accusative
- 6 **barbaris...defuit**: *fail the barbarians*; dat. of interest  
**tōtā acie**: *on the entire battle line*; place where
- 7 **prōnūtiāre**: *commanded*; *dūcēs* is acc. subj., the inf. governs the ind. command (*nē*)  
**nē quis**: *that not anyone...*; *aliquis, aliquid* is a common indefinite pronoun (anyone, anything), but *quis, quid* is commonly used as an indefinite (who → anyone, what → anything) after *sī, nisi, num, and nē*. The mnemonic for this construction is the jingle “After *sī, nisi, num, and nē*, all the *ali*’s go away” (in other words indefinite *aliquid* becomes just *quid*)
- 7 **illorum esse praedam**: (*and*) *that the loot was theirs*; i.e. the Gauls’, the indirect discourse is parallel to the ind. command and likewise governed by *prōnūtiāre*  
**illis**: *for them*; dat. of interest
- 8 **quaecumque...reliquissent**: *whatsoever...*; relative clause of characteristic (plpf. subj.); the missing antecedent is acc. subject of *reservārī*  
**proinde...existimarent**: *therefore let them think that*; a jussive (volitive) subjunctive in indirect discourse remains a subjunctive; in secondary sequence the pres. subj. is impf.
- 9 **posita (esse)**: *have been put aside*; i.e. the loot from the Romans is waiting for the Gauls to take it; ind. discourse, *omnia* is acc. subject  
**et virtute et studio**: *both in...*; abl. of respect qualifying *parēs*  
**pugnandī**: gen. sg. gerund  
**nostrī**: *our (soldiers)*; nom. subject
- 10 **Fortūnā**: *fortūnā* is personified as a goddess
- 11 **ab eā parte**: *from that side*
- 12 **Quā rē animadversā**: *with this matter...*; abl. abs.; translate the relative as demonstrative  
**prōnūtiārī...ut**: *it to be commanded that...*; pass. inf. governs indirect command
- 13 **neu**: *and not; nēve*  
**quam in partem**: *in whatever direction...*; relative clause of characteristic with pf. subjunctive of *faciō*
- 14 **cēdant**: *they withdraw (from this direction)*
- 15 **nihil**: *not at all*; adverbial accusative  
**eīs...posse**: *that it is possible for them*; ind. discourse with an impersonal inf. *possum*  
**sē...recipientēs**: (*the Romans*) *while retreating to their standards*; i.e. attack the Romans as they try to relign themselves with the fixed military standards for each unit acc. d.o. of *īnsequantur*
- 16 **īnsequantur**: pres. subjunctive, part of the indirect command introduced by *ut* in line 13
- 17 **Quō praeceptō...**: *this instruction...*; abl. abs.  
**ab eīs**: i.e. by the Gauls  
**diligentissimē**: superlative adverb  
**quaepiam cohort**: *any cohort*
- 18 **vēlōcissimē**: superlative adverb, *vēlōx, vēlōcis*
- 19 **necesse erat**: *it was necessary*  
**recipī**: pres. pass. inf., *tēla* is neuter acc. subj.

### Ablative Absolute in Translation

Absolutes are circumstantial, causal, or concessive in sense, even if the translation does not reveal it.

Cum-Clauses are just as versatile and can have a similar variety of uses within a Latin sentence.

<b>verbis auditis</b>	1. raw translation	<i>(with) the words having been heard...</i>
	2. Circumstantial	<b>When/After</b> the words had been heard...
	3. Causal	<b>Since/Because</b> the words had been heard...
	4. Concessive	<b>Although</b> the words had been heard...
<b>Caesar audiente</b>	1. raw translation	<i>(with) Caesar listening</i>
	2. Circumstantial	<b>When/While</b> Caesar is/was listening...
	3. Causal	<b>Since/Because</b> Caesar is/was listening...
	4. Concessive	<b>Although</b> Caesar is/was listening...

35.3 Rūrsus cum in eum locum unde erant ēgressī revertī coeperant, et ab 1  
 eīs quī cesserant et ab eīs quī proximī steterant circumveniēbantur; 4. sīn  
 autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquēbatur neque ab tantā  
 multitūdine coniecta tēla confertī vitāre poterant. 5. Tamen tot incommodīs  
 cōnfectātī, multīs vulneribus acceptīs, resistēbant; et magnā parte diēi 5  
 cōnsūptā, cum ā prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur, nihil quod  
 ipsīs esset indignum committēbant. 6. Tum Titō Balventiō, quī superiōre  
 annō prīmum pīlum dūxerat, virō fortī et magnae auctōritātis, utrumque  
 femur trāgulā trāicitur; 7. Quintus Lucānius, eiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē  
 pugnāns, dum circumventō filiō subvenit, interficitur; 8. Lucius Cotta lēgātus 10  
 omnēs cohortēs ordinēque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā vulnerātur.

36.1 Hīs rēbus permōtus Quintus Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs  
 cohortantem cōspexisset, interpretem suum Gnaeum Pompeium ad eum  
 mittit rogātum ut sibi mīlitibusque parcat. 2. Ille appellātus respondit: si velit  
 sēcum colloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitūdine impetrārī posse, quod ad 15  
 mīlitum salūtem pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil nocitum īrī, inque eam rem sē  
 suam fidem interpōnere. Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, 3. sī videātur,  
 pugnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorīge ūnā colloquantur: spērāre ab eō de suā  
 ac mīlitum salūte impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat  
 atque in eō persevērat. 20

**adhortor, -ārī, -ātum:** encourage, urge on, 1  
**adversus, -a, -um:** opposite, in front, 2  
**armātus, -a, -um:** armed, armor-clad, 2  
**auctōritās, -tātis f.:** influence, clout, 3  
**Balventius, -ī m.:** Balventius, 1  
**cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus:** withdraw, move, 2  
**coepī, coepisse, coeptum:** to begin, 9  
**cohortor, -ārī, cohortātum:** urge on, incite 3  
**colloquor, -quī, -locūtum:** to converse, 4  
**committō, -ere:** commence, commit, entrust 4  
**communicō (1):** share, impart, 4  
**confertus, a, um:** crowded together, dense, 3  
**conflictō (1):** contend with, harm, 1  
**conspiciō, -ere, spexī, spectus:** to see, behold 5  
**consumō, -ere, -sumpsī:** to use up, spend, 2  
**eō, īre, īvī, itum:** to go, come, 4  
**excēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum:** go out, 3  
**femur, femori n.:** thigh, 1  
**fidēs, eī f.:** faith, honor, 4  
**funda, ae f.:** sling, 3  
**Gnaeus, -ī m.:** Gnaeus, 1  
**hora, -ae f.:** hour, 4  
**impetrō (1):** to obtain, accomplish, 3  
**incommodus, -a, -um:** unfortunate, disastrous, 3  
**indignus, -a, -um:** unworthy, undeserving, 1

**interpōnō, -ere, -posuī:** include, introduce, 2  
**interpres, interpretis m/f.:** messenger, 1  
**Lucānius, -ī m.:** Lucanius, 1  
**lūx, lūcis, f.:** light, 3  
**nec:** and not, nor (nec, nec = neither, nor) 2  
**negō (1):** to deny, say that...not, 2  
**noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum:** harm, injure, hurt, 2  
**octāvus, -a, -um:** eighth, 1  
**ōs, ōris n.:** face, mouth 1  
**parcō, -ere, pepercī:** to spare, refrain (dat), 2  
**perseverō (1):** to persist, persevere, 1  
**pīlum, -ī n.:** pilum, javelin, 3  
**Pompeius, -ī m.:** Pompey, 1  
**procul:** far, from a distance, from afar, 3  
**respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsum:** to answer, 3  
**revertor, -ī, reversus sum:** to turn back, return, 2  
**rogō (1):** to ask; tell, 2  
**rursus:** again, backward, back, 4  
**saucius, -a, -us:** wounded, injured, hurt, 1  
**sīn:** but if, if however, 1  
**stō, -āre, stēfī, stātum:** stand still, stop, 3  
**subveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum:** come up to, aid,  
 relieve, 2  
**Titus, -ī m.:** Titus, 4  
**tot:** so many, 2

**trāgula, -ae f.:** tragula (a Gallic javelin) 3

**trāciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum:** pierce, cast across, 2

**unde:** whence, from which source, 3

**vērō:** in truth, truly, in fact, to be sure, 3

**vir, virī m.:** man, 4

**vītō (1):** avoid, evade, shun, 1

**vulnerō (1):** wound, injure, 3

**vulnus, -eris n.:** wound, blow, 3

1 **unde erant ēgressī:** plpf. dep. ēgredior  
**revertī:** present deponent inf.

2 **cesserant:** *had withdrawn*; As some of the Romans made attacks from the circle (orbis), the opposing enemy withdrew temporarily and the flanks (quī proximī steterant) attacked. When the Romans returned to the circle, the opposing enemy would advance once again

3 **locum tenēre:** *to hold ground*; i.e. if the Romans did not advance in groups but instead remained together in the circle

**vellent:** *they should wish*; an impf. subjunctive, the protasis of a mixed condition in secondary sequence;

**nec...neque:** *neither...nor*; linking the apodosis  
**locus:** *opportunity...*

**virtūtī:** *for valor*; dat. of purpose

4 **conferūtī:** modifies the nom. subject

**incommodīs cōnflctātī:** *harmed by so many disadvantages*

5 **multīs...accēptīs:** ablative absolute

**resistēbant:** *they kept on fighting*; iterative impf.

**magnā...cōnsūptā:** abl. absolute

6 **cum...pugnārētur:** *although they fought*; cum is concessive in force; impersonal passive p. 57

**quod ipsīs...indignum:** *which was unworthy of the Romans themselves*; indignus, “unworthy of,” governs an abl., here the intensive ipsīs

7 **Titō Balventiō:** *to Titus Balventius*; dat. of interest

**superiōre annō:** *in...;* abl. of time when

8 **p̄mum p̄lum:** *the first pilum*; the officer known as Primus Pilus was the highly ranked centurion who threw the first p̄lum in battle; Titus held this rank during the previous year

**virō fortī:** dat. in apposition to Titō Balventiō

**magnae auctōritātis:** *of great clout*; gen. of quality parallel with dative fortī

**utrumque femur:** *each thigh*; neuter subject

9 **eiusdem ōrdinis:** *of the same rank*; gen. quality

**fortissimē:** superlative adverb

**pugnāns:** nom. sg. pres. pple, pugnō

10 **subvenit:** *he is approaching to help*

11 **in adversum ōs:** *full on the mouth*; “onto the opposing mouth,” acc. place to which; another meaning for ōs, ōris is “face”

12 **hīs rēbus:** *because of these things*; abl. cause  
**suōs:** *his own (men)*; i.e. Ambiorix’s men, the reflexive should grammatically refer to the subject Cotta’s men but it does not

13 **eum:** *him*; i.e. Ambiorix

14 **rogātum:** *to ask*; supine (PPP + um) in the accusative expresses purpose, which in English is often expressed with an infinitive  
**ut...parcat:** ind. command following rogātum  
**sibi militibusque:** *him and (his) soldiers*; i.e. Cotta and his soldiers

**sī velit:** *if he wishes*; subordinate clauses in ind. discourse often fall into the subjunctive; here a pres. subjunctive of volō, velle in what was originally a present simple condition

15 **sēcum:** cum sē

**licēre:** *it is allowed (for him)*; i.e. for Titurius, ind. discourse with an impersonal verb

**spērāre:** *that (he) hoped*; i.e. Ambiorix hoped  
**ā multitūdine:** i.e. from the Gauls

**quod...pertineat:** *(that) which...*; the missing antecedent is acc. subject of posse impetrārī; this is a relative clause of characteristic with the present subjunctive

16 **ipsī:** *that for (Titurius) himself*; dative interest or possible a dat. of agent with nocitum īrī

**nihil:** *not at all*; “in no way,” acc. of respect  
**nocitum īrī:** *it would not be harmed*; “it is going to be harmed:” a future passive inf. (supine + pres. pass. inf. of eō, īre), here impersonal

**ipsī...nocitum īrī:** *that indeed he himself would not at all be harmed*; “indeed for him himself not at all it was going to be harmed,” a rare future passive inf. (supine + pres. pass. inf. of eō, īre), here impersonal

**sē...interpōnere:** *he gave his pledge*

17 **Ille:** *that one*; i.e. Titurius speaks with Cotta  
**videātur:** *it seems good*; i.e. if he agrees with Ambiorix’s terms; subordinate clauses govern a subjunctive in ind. discourse

**pugnā:** *from battle*; abl. separation

**ut...colloquantur:** *(namely) that...*; noun

result clause governed by impersonal videātur

18 **spērāre:** *that (Cotta) hoped*; see also line 15

**ab eō:** *from him*; i.e. from Ambiorix

19 **sē itūrum esse:** fut. inf. eō, īre

37.1 Sabīnus quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs mīlitum circum sē habēbat et 1  
 p̄m̄ōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet et, cum propius Ambiorīgem  
 accessisset, iussus arma abicere, imperātum facit suīsque ut idem faciant  
 imperat. 2. Interim, dum dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōsultō  
 ab Ambiorīge īnstitutur sermō, paulātīm circumventus interficitur. 3. Tum 5  
 vērō suō mōre ‘Victōriam’ conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt impetūque in  
 nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant. 4. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnāns interficitur cum  
 maximā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressī; 5. ex  
 quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magnā multitudīne hostium  
 premerētur, aquilam intrā vallum proiēcit; ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pugnāns 10  
 occīditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; 6. noctū ad unum  
 omnēs, despērātā salūte, sē ipsī interficiunt. 7. Paucī ex proeliō lapsī incertīs  
 itineribus per silvās ad Titum Labiēnum legātum in hīberna perveniunt atque  
 eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

38.1 Hāc victoriā sublātus Ambiorīx statim cum equitātū in Aduatucōs, quī 15  
 erant eius regnō finītīmī, proficīscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit  
 peditātumque sēsē subsequī iubet. 2. Rē demonstrātā Aduatucīsque concitātīs  
 posterō diē in Nervīōs pervenit hortāturque, nē suī in perpetuum liberandī  
 atque ulcīscendī Rōmānōs prō eīs, quās acceperint, iniūriīs occāsionem  
 dīmittant: 3. interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs magnamque partem exercitūs 20  
 interīsse demōnstrat; 4. nihil esse negōtī, subitō oppressam legiōnem quae  
 cum Cicerōne hiemet interficī; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem. Facile  
 hāc ōrātiōne Nervīīs persuādet.

**abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum:** throw aside or away, 2  
**adiūtōr, -ōris m.:** helper, assistant, 2  
**aeger, -gra, -grum:** sick, weary; *adv.* scarcely, 4  
**agō, agere, ēgī, āctum:** drive, lead, do, 4  
**aquila, -ae f.:** eagle, eagle standard, 4  
**aquilifer, -ferī m.:** eagle-bearer, 1  
**centurio, -iōnis m.:** centurion, 4  
**circum:** around, round about, 2  
**concitō (1):** stir up, incite, impel, 2  
**conclamō (1):** cry out together, shout, 2  
**condiciō, -ciōnis f.:** arrangement, state, 2  
**consultō:** on purpose, deliberately, 3  
**dēspērō (1):** to have no hope, give up, 2  
**dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus:** lose, send (away), 3  
**hiemō (1):** spend the winter, 3  
**hortor, -ārī, hortātum:** encourage, urge, 2  
**incertus, -a, -um:** unreliable, doubtful, 2  
**iniūria, -ae f.:** wrong, insult, injustice, 4  
**instituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum:** set, establish, 3  
**intereō, -īre, -ivī, -ītum:** to die, perish, 3  
**intrā:** within, among (+ acc.), 3

**lābor, lābī, lapsus:** glide, slide, slip, 1  
**liberō (1):** free, liberate, 3  
**mōs, mōris m.:** custom, manner, law, 4  
**negōtium, īī n.:** business, task, 2  
**noctū:** by night; abl. as adv. nox, noctis, 4  
**occāsio, -iōnis f.:** opportunity, occasion, 2  
**occīdō, -ere, occidī, occisus:** kill, cut down 4  
**opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum:** crush,  
 burden, overwhelm, 3  
**paucī, -ae, -a:** little, few, scanty, 4  
**paulātīm:** gradually, little by little, 3  
**peditātus, -ūs m.:** infantry, 3  
**perpetuus, -a, -um:** constant, everlasting, 4  
**Petrosidius, -ī m.:** Petrosidius, 1  
**posterus, -a, -um:** next, following, 2  
**praesentia, -ae f.:** presence, 2  
**profiteor, -ērī, -fessum:** profess, declare, 1  
**proiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum:** throw  
 forward, project, 2  
**proprius:** more closely, nearer, 3  
**sequor, -ī, secūtus:** follow, pursue, 4

**sermo, -mōnis m.:** conversation, discourse, 3  
**silva, -ae f.:** wood, forest, woodland, 4  
**statim:** immediately, at once, 4  
**Titus, -ī m.:** Titus, 4  
**tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum:** raise, destroy, 2

**tribūnus, -ī m.:** tribune, officer, 2  
**ulciscor, -ī, ultum:** avenge, take vengeance 1  
**ululātus, -ūs m.:** howling, wailing, yelling, 1  
**unde:** whence, from which source, 3  
**vērō:** in truth, truly, in fact, to be sure, 3

- 1 **quōs...tribūnōs militum...habēbat:** *those tribunes of the soldiers whom...;* tribūnōs is antecedent—not part of—quōs...habēbat
- 2 **sequī:** inf. sequor  
**iubet:** both tribūnōs, centruriōnēs are objects
- 3 **accessisset:** plpf. subjunctive accēdō  
**iussus:** PPP iubeō, iubere  
**imperātum facit:** *carries out the command;* “the thing having been commanded” PPP  
**suīs:** *his own (men);* dat. object of imperat  
**ut...faciant:** ind. command  
**idem:** *the same thing;* id-dem, neuter acc. sg.
- 4 **dē condiōnibus...agunt:** *they talk about the conditions...;* common idiom employing agō and dē + ablative, here the conditions of surrender  
**inter sē:** *with one another;* ‘among themselves’  
**longior...īnstituīt sermō:** *a longer conversation is arranged*  
**cōsultō:** *deliberately;* ablative as an adverb
- 5 **circumventus:** the nom. subject is Sabīnus
- 6 **suō mōre:** *by their custom;* “from their custom”  
**Victoriam:** Latin exclamation take the acc.
- 7 **impetū...factō:** ablative absolute  
**in nostrōs:** *against our (soldiers)*
- 8 **Reliquī:** *the remaining (men);* i.e. the survivors  
**sē...recipiunt:** *retreat;* “take themselves back”
- 9 **erant ēgressī:** plpf. deponent ēgredior  
**ex quibus:** *from these;* for transitions, English speakers prefer a demonstrative
- 10 **aquilam:** *the eagle;* i.e. the entire wooden standard which contained the golden image of an eagle on top; the aquilifer saves the eagle from capture as one today might save a flag  
**vallum:** i.e. the wall of the camp, which often consisted of mound of earth with a wooden palisade on top and a deep ditch below  
**prō:** *in front of;* + ablative  
**pugnāns:** pres. pple, pugnō
- 11 **aegrē...sustinent:** *with difficulty sustained;* “scarcely sustained”  
**ad noctem:** *till the night*  
**noctū:** *at night;* adverb  
**ad ūnum:** *to the man*
- 12 **despērātās salūte:** abl. abs.  
**ipsī:** *themselves;* nom. pl., intensive pronoun
- lapsī:** *having slipped;* pf. deponent pple labor  
**incertīs itineribus:** *by uncertain routes*
- 13 **in hiberna:** *into winter-quarters;* a journey of about 100 miles at this time
- 14 **certiōrem faciunt:** *inform;* “make him more certain;” a common idiom in Caesar  
**gestīs:** *carried out;* PPP gerō
- 15 **sublātus:** *uplifted;* i.e. “elated,” PPP tollō, as often, the prefix sub- means “from under up”  
**in Aduatucōs:** *to the Aduatuci;* or ‘among...’
- 16 **regnō:** dative with the predicate adj. finītimī
- 17 **subsequī:** pres. deponent inf.  
**Rē...concitātis:** two ablative absolutes
- 18 **posterō diē:** *on...;* ablative time when  
**in Nerviōs:** *to the Nervii, among the Nervii*  
**nē...acceperint (et)...dīmittant:** *that they not...;* negative ind. command governed by hortātur
- suī...liberandī:** *of freeing themselves;* gen. sg. gerundive; when translating, employ a gerund-gerundive flip: make suī the gerund’s object (sē), this genitive modifies occāsiōnem
- 19 **ulciscendī Rōmānōs:** a gen. sg. gerund and acc. object (this construction is unusual since it is often expressed as a noun + modifying gerundive); parallel to liberandī and likewise modifying occāsiōnem  
**prō eis...iniūriīs:** *(in return) for...;* eis is a demonstrative modifying iniūriās  
**quās acceperint:** perfect subj. in a relative clause of characteristic; the antecedent is fem. plural iniūriīs
- 20 **interfectōs esse:** *that...;* pf. pass. infinitive interficiō with lēgātōs duōs as acc. subject  
**lēgātōs duōs:** i.e. Sabīnus and Cotta
- 21 **interisse:** *to have perished;* interiisse, pf. inf. intereō with partem as acc. subject  
**nihil esse negōtī:** *that there is no trouble;* “nothing of business,” negōtī is a partitive gen. the acc. + inf. is governed by profitētur below  
**oppressam:** *having been surprised;* opprimō
- 22 **hiemet:** pres. subj., rel. clause of characteristic  
**interfici:** pres. passive inf., legiōnem is acc. subj. and is governed by profitētur  
**sē:** *that he (was);* supply esse

39.1 Itaque cōnfestim dīmissīs nuntiīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levācōs, 1  
 Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam maximās  
 manūs possunt cōgunt et dē improvīsō ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant  
 nōndum ad eum famā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. 2. Huic quoque accidit, quod 5  
 fuit necesse, ut nōnnūllī mīlitēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā in silvās  
 discessissent, repentinō equitum adventū interciperentur. 3. Hīs circumventīs  
 magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nervīī, Aduatuī atque hōrum omnium sociī et  
 clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt,  
 vāllum conscendunt. 4. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs 10  
 in celeritāte ponēbant atque hanc adeptī victōriam in perpetuum sē fore  
 victōrēs cōnfīdēbant.

40.1 Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ab Cicerōne litterae magnīs  
 prōpositīs praemiīs, sī pertulissent: obsessīs omnibus viīs missī intercipiuntur.  
 2. Noctū ex materiā, quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant, turrēs 15  
 admodum CXX excitantur incrēdibilī celeritāte; quae dēesse operī vidēbantur,  
 perficiuntur. 3. Hostēs posterō diē, multō maiōribus coāctis copiīs, castra  
 oppugnant, fossam complent. Eādem ratiōne, quā prīdiē, ab nostrīs resistitur:  
 4. hoc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus.

**adipiscor, -ī, adeptum:** get, obtain, reach, 1  
**admodum:** completely, quite; just about, 2  
**advolō (1):** to fly to, rush to, 1  
**aeger, -gra, -grum:** sick, weary, 4  
**Ceutronēs, -um m.:** Ceutrones (tribe) 1  
**cliens, -entis m.:** client, dependent, 4  
**compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum:** fill up, fill, 6  
**comportō (1):** carry together, collect, 3  
**concurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus:** run eagerly, clash, 2  
**cōnfestim:** immediately, 4  
**confidō, -ere, confisus sum:** trust, believe, rely upon, 4  
**conscendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus:** climb, board, 1  
**deinceps:** one after another, successively, 1  
**dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus:** send (away), 3  
**excitō (1):** excite, rouse up, raise, inspire, 3  
**fāma, -ae f.:** rumor, story, hearsay, 2  
**fiō, fierī, factus:** become, be made, 3  
**fossa, -ae f.:** ditch, trench, 2  
**Geidumnī, -ōrum m.:** Geidumnī, 1  
**Grudiī, -ōrum m.:** Grudiī, 1  
**improvīsus, -a, -um:** unforeseen, unexpected, 1  
**incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptum:** begin, 1  
**incrēdibilis, -e:** unbelievable, 1  
**intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** catch, intercept, 3

**Levācī, -ōrum m.:** Levaciī, 1  
**lignātiō, -tiōnis f.:** gathering of timber, 1  
**materia, -ae f.:** timber, wood, material, 2  
**necesse:** necessary; (it is) necessary, 4  
**noctū:** by night; abl. as adv. nox, noctis, 4  
**nōndum:** not yet, 3  
**nōnnullus, -a, -um:** some, not none, 2  
**obsidēō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum:** besiege, beset, 2  
**opus, -eris n.:** work, deed, toil, 2  
**perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus:** carry through, 2  
**perficiō, -ere:** complete, accomplish, 3  
**perpetuus, -a, -um:** constant, everlasting, 4  
**Pleumoxiī, -iōrum m.:** Pleumoxiī, 1  
**posterus, -a, -um:** next, following, 2  
**prīdiē:** on the day before, the previous day, 1  
**prōponō, -ere, posuī, positum:** to set forth, 1  
**quoque:** also, 2  
**repentinus, -a, -um:** sudden, unexpected, 4  
**silva, -ae f.:** wood, forest, woodland, 4  
**socius, -ī m.:** comrade, ally, companion, 2  
**sustentō (1):** to hold up, sustain, maintain, 1  
**via, -ae, f.:** road, way, path, 2  
**victor, -ōris m.:** conquerer, vanquisher, 1

- 2 **cōrum**: *their*; i.e. of the Nervii  
**quam maximās...possunt**: *the largest groups (as) they are able*; quam + superl. = “as X as possible,” possunt makes construction explicit  
**cōgunt**: *they gather together*
- 3 **dē improvīsō**: *unexpectedly*; “from the unforeseen,” often with preposition
- 4 **nōndum ad eum**: part of the abl. absolute from fāmā to perlātā  
**perlātā**: PPP perferō  
**Titūrī**: gen. sg., Quintus Titūrius Sabīnus
- 4 **Huic quoque**: *to this one also*; i.e. to Cicero  
**quod fuit necesse**: *which was inevitable*
- 5 **ut...interciperentur**: *that...*; noun result clause governed by accidit  
**causā**: *for the sake of...*; + preceding genitives
- 6 **discessissent**: *had gone out*; i.e. from the camp, plpf. subjunctive in a relative clause of characteristic
- 7 **His circumventīs**: abl. absolute  
**magnā manū**: *with a great band*; abl. of means with the ablative absolute
- 8 **Nostrī**: *our (soldiers)*
- 9 **conscendunt**: *(and) climb*; asyndeton, the lack of conjunctions suggests that the Romans were acting quickly and decisively  
**aegrē**: *with difficulty*; adv. of aeger
- 10 **adep̄tī**: *having attained*; perfect deponent pple adipiscor  
**in perpetuum**: *for ever*; “into perpetual (time),” supply neuter acc. tempus  
**fore**: *would be*; alternative to futūrum esse, a fut. inf. in ind. discourse governed by cōnfidēbant, sē is acc. subj.
- 12 **magnīs...praemiīs**: *... (to the messengers)*; abl. absolute; the offer is made to the messengers of the letters
- 13 **sī pertulissent**: *if (the messengers) had carried (the letters) through (to Caesar)*; protasis in a past contrary-to-fact condition  
**obsessīs...viīs**: abl. absolute causal in force, the viae are likely paths or routes  
**missī**: *(the messengers) sent*; PPP mittō
- 14 **noctū**: *at night*; ablative as adverb  
**causā**: *for the sake of*; + preceding genitive
- 15 **incrēdibilī celeritatē**: *with...*; abl. of manner drops “cum” when there is an adjective, here i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> declension  
**quae dēesse operī vidēbantur**: *(the things) which seemed to be lacking for the work*; i.e. whatever seemed to be incomplete
- 16 **perficiuntur**: missing antecedent of the relative clause is subject  
**posterō diē**: *on...*; time when  
**multō**: *much...*; “by much,” ablative of degree of difference with comparative maiōribus  
**maiōribus...copiīs**: ablative absolute
- 17 **(et) fossam**: asyndeton  
**Eādē ratiōne**: *by the same method*  
**quā (ratiōne) prīdiē**: *in which (manner) (they resisted) the day before*; i.e. “as on the day before,” relative clause, add ratiōne, resistitur  
**ab nostrīs resistitur**: *our men resisted*; “it is resisted by our (men),” impers. pass. below
- 18 **hoc idem**: *this same thing*; id-dem, neuter singular nom. subject  
**fit**: 3<sup>rd</sup> sg. pres. fiō; often passive for faciō  
**reliquīs...diēbus**: *in...*; abl. time when

### Impersonal Verb Constructions

Impersonal verbs are found in the 3<sup>rd</sup> sg. and translated with the subject “it.” The passive of an intransitive verb (e.g. ventum est) is often used impersonally with dat. of agent but should be translated actively.

accidit	it happens + ut (noun result clause)	p. 18, 20, 28, 32, 48, 50, 56
constat	it is agreed	p. 18, 34
fās est	it is right + inf.	p. 28
fit	it happens/is done + ut (noun result clause)	p. 56
licet	it is allowed + inf.	p. 10, 32, 46, 52, 58
oportet	it is desirable/fitting/necessary + inf.	p. 6, 18
potest	it is possible	p. 10, 50
videtur	it seems +ut (noun result clause)	p. 52
cōnurgitur	they rise (it is arisen)	p. 46
perventum est	they arrived (it was arrived)	p. 38
pugnārētur	they were fighting (it was fought)	p. 52, 64
pugnātum est	each side fought (it was fought by each side)	p. 14
resistitur	our men resisted (it was resisted by our men)	p. 56
ventum est	they came (it has been come)	p. 16, 38

40.5 Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn 1  
vulnerātīs facultās quiētīs dātur. 6. Quaecumque ad proximī dieī  
oppugnātiōnem opus sunt, noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs,  
magnus murālium pīlōrum numerus īnstituitur; turrēs contabulantur, pinnae  
lorīcaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. 7. Ipse Cicerō cum tenuissimā valētūdine 5  
esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō  
mīlitum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

41.1 Tunc ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviorum quī aliquem sermōnis aditum  
causamque amīcitiāe cum Cicerōne habēbant colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. 2.  
Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorīx cum Titūrīō ēgerat commemorant: 10  
omnem esse in armīs Galliam; 3. Germānōs Rhēnum trānsisse; Caesaris  
reliquōrumque hīberna oppugnārī. 4. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte:  
Ambiorīgem ostentant fideī faciendae causā. 5. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī  
quidquam ab hīs praesidī spērent, quī suīs rēbus diffīdant; sēsē tamen hōc esse  
in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō, ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsent 15  
atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuetūdinem nōlint: 6. licēre illīs incolumibus per  
sē ex hībernis discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine metū proficīscī.

**addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum:** to bring to, add, 4  
**aditus, -ūs m.:** approach, access, entrance, 2  
**aeger, -gra, -grum:** sick, weary, 4  
**agō, agere, ēgī, āctum:** drive, lead, do, 4  
**attexō, -ere, -texuī, textum:** weave, add on 1  
**colloquium, -iī n.:** conversation, talk, 1  
**commemorō (1):** call to mind, recollect, 1  
**comparō (1):** prepare, get ready, provide, 4  
**concursum, -ūs m.:** running together, gathering, 1  
**contabulō (1):** to equip with boarded platforms, 1  
**crātis, -is f.:** (wicker) frame, fascines, 1  
**diffidō, -ere, diffisum:** mistrust, despair (dat.), 1  
**dux, ducis m./f.:** leader, guide, chief, 4  
**errō (1):** to wander, rove, stray, 1  
**fidēs, eī f.:** faith, honor, 4  
**incolumis, -e:** unscathed, uninjured, safe, 2  
**instituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum:** set, establish, 3  
**inveterascō (1):** to become old, 1  
**labor, -ōris m.:** labor, hardship, task, 1  
**lorīca, -ae f.:** parapet, breastwork, 1  
**metus, -ūs f.:** dread, fear, 2  
**mūrālis, -e:** of a wall, mural, 1  
**noctū:** by night; abl. as adv. nox, noctis, 4

**nocturnus, -a, -um:** nocturnal, nightly, 3  
**nōlō, nolle, nolū:** to refuse, be unwilling, 1  
**ostentō (1):** show (off), display, point out, 1  
**parcō, -ere, pepercī:** to spare, refrain (dat), 2  
**pīlum, -ī n.:** pilum, javelin, 3  
**pinna, -ae f.:** battlement on wall; feather, 1  
**potestās, -tātis f.:** power, ability, capacity, 3  
**praesidium, -iī n.:** guard, protection; assistance, 2  
**praeūstus, -a, -um:** burned at the end, 1  
**princeps, -cipis m./f.:** chief, leader, 4  
**quicumque, quae-, quod-:** whosoever, 4  
**quiēs, quiētis f.:** rest, repose, sleep, 2  
**quisquam, quidquam:** anyone, anything? 2  
**recūsō (1):** to object to, refuse, reject, 1  
**sermo, -mōnis m.:** conversation, discourse, 3  
**sudis, -is:** stake, spike, 1  
**tenuis, -e:** thin, slender, 1  
**tunc:** then, at that time, 1  
**ultrō:** voluntarily; moreover, beyond, 3  
**valētūdo, -dinis f.:** state of health, health, 1  
**vōx, vōcis, f.:** voice; utterance, word, 4  
**vulnerō (1):** wound, injure, 3

- 1 **nocturnī temporis**: partitive genitive  
**ad labōrem**: *for work*; expressing purpose it modifies the subject not the verb: the line reads “no part of the night time (devoted) for work is interrupted” whereas we would prefer “no part of the night time is interrupted from work”  
**aegrīs**: *to the sick*; dat. indirect object
- 2 **vulnerātīs**: dat. indirect object  
**quiētīs**: *for...*; dative of purpose; double dat.  
**quaecumque...opus sunt**: *whatsoever is the work (to be done)*; or “whatsoever is the need”  
**opus est**, “there is a need,” often governs a dat. of interest and abl. of the object wanted; less frequently, as here, there is a subject and **opus** is the predicate  
**proximī diē**: gen. sg.
- 3 **noctū**: *at night*; abl. as adverb
- 4 **contabulantur**: *are equipped with boarded platforms*; the wooden towers are multi-storied with wood floors
- 5 **Ipse Cicerō**: nom. subj. within the cum-clause  
**cum..esset**: *although he was*; impf. subjunctive in a cum-clause which is concessive in force  
**tenuissimā valētūdine**: *of very weak health*; abl. of quality, predicate as **esset**
- 6 **nē...quidem**: *not even*; **nē quidem** emphasizes the intervening word  
**ad quiētum**: *for...*; ad + acc. expresses purpose  
**ut...cōgerētur**: *so that he was compelled*; impf. subj. in a result clause  
**ultrō**: *voluntarily*
- 7 **parcere**: governs a dative
- 8 **aliquem...aditum**: *some (right of) entry into conversation*; the Nervii had previously established a rapport with the Romans that entitled them to approach and speak
- 9 **causamque amicitiae**: *reason for friendship*  
**sēsē velle**: *that they are willing*; i.e. Nervii, **velle** is a pres. inf. **vōlō**, **colloquī** is a deponent complementary infinitive
- 10 **factā potestāte**: *permission having been given*; “opportunity having been made,” idiom  
**ēgerat**: *had discussed*; “had conducted”
- 11 **trānsisse**: pf. inf. **trānseō**, **Germānōs** acc. subj.
- 12 **oppugnārī**: *are being assaulted*; pres. pass., **hīberna**, “winter-quarters” is acc. subject  
**Addunt**: *they add*; i.e. “they say in addition”
- 13 **Ambiorīgem ostentant**: *they point to Ambiorix*  
**fideī faciendī**: *of forming trust*; gen. sg. gerundive + noun; gerund-gerundive flip  
**eōs**: *that they*; i.e. the Romans, acc. subject
- 14 **quidquam...praesidī**: *any protection*; “anything of protection,” partitive gen.  
**spērent**: *hoped*; impf. subj. in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse  
**quī...diffidant**: pres. subj. in a relative clause of characteristic, **hīs** is the antecedent, the verb governs a dative
- 14 **sēsē hōc esse...animō**: *that they are of this mind toward...*; i.e. the Nervii, abl. of quality as predicate
- 15 **in**: *toward...*  
**ut...recūset...nōlint**: result clause, present subjunctive **recūsō**, **nōlō**  
**nihil nisi hīberna**: *nothing except winter-quarters*; the Nervii claim to be willing to be friends (see “**amicitiae**” above) but will not allow the Romans to maintain a military camp in the territory of the Nervii
- 16 **licēre**: *that it is allowed for those...*; indirect disc., the infinitive represents an impersonal verb with governs a dat. of interest
- 17 **per sē**: *by themselves*  
**discēdere...proficīscī**: infinitives, active and deponent, governed by **licēre**  
**quāscumque in partēs**: *in whatsoever directions*; introduces a relative clause of characteristic with a pres. subjunctive **volō**

#### Indicative Conditions In Secondary Sequence: Direct and Indirect Discourse

##### Simple Present (Pres., Pres.)

dixī “sī credis, errās.” → dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errāre  
*I said, “if you believe this, you are wrong”* *I said that, if you believed this, you were wrong.*

##### Future More Vivid (fut. (pf.), fut.):

dixī “sī credēs/credideris, errābis.” → dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse  
*I said, “if you believe this, you will be wrong”* *I said that, if you believed this, you would be wrong.*

##### Simple Past (past, past):

dixī “sī credēbās/credidistī, errāvistī.” → dixī sī haec crederēs/credidissēs, tē errāvisse.  
*I said, “if you believed this, you were wrong”* *I said that, if you (had) believed this, you had been...*

41.7 Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondit: nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī 1  
Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiōnem: 8. sī ab armīs discēdere velint,  
sē adiūtore ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre prō eius iustitiā,  
quae petierint, impertātūrōs.

42.1 Ab hāc spē repulsī Nervii vallō pedum IX et fossā pedum XV hīberna 5  
cingunt. 2. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ab nōbīs cognōverant  
et, quōs dē exercitū habēbant captīvōs, ab eīs docēbantur; 3. sed nullā  
ferramentōrum copiā, quae esset ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs  
circumcidere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhaurīre nitēbantur. 4. Quā quidem  
ex rē hominum multitudō cognoscī potuit: nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium 10  
pedum XV in circuitū mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt 5. reliquīsque diēbus turrēs ad  
altitudinem vallī, falcēs testudinēsque, quās īdem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac  
facere coepērunt.

43.1 Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē, maximō coōrtō ventō, ferventēs fusilī ex 15  
argillā glandēs fundis et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō  
strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. 2. Hae celeriter ignem  
comprehendērunt et ventī magnitudine in omnem locum castrōrum  
distulērunt.

**adiūtōr, -ōris m.:** helper, assistant, 2  
**altitudō, -inis f.:** height, depth, altitude, 2  
**argilla, -ae f.:** potter's clay, white clay, 1  
**armātus, -a, -um:** armed, armor-clad, 2  
**caespes, -pitis m.:** turf, sod, grass, 1  
**captīvus, -a, -um:** prisoner, captive, 3  
**casa, casae f.:** house, home, 1  
**cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīctus:** surround, 1  
**circuitus, -ūs m.:** circumference, circuit, 1  
**circumcidō, -ere, -cidi:** cut around or off, 1  
**coepī, coepisse, coeptum:** to begin, 9  
**comprehendō, -ere, -dī:** seize, arrest; grasp 4  
**condiciō, -ciōnis f.:** arrangement, state, 2  
**coōrior, -īrī, coōrtus:** arise, break out, 2  
**discō, -ere, -didici:** learn, get to know, 2  
**differō, -ferre, distuli:** carry different ways 2  
**doceō, -ēre, -uī, -ctus:** teach, tell, 4  
**exhauriō, -īre, -īvī:** take away, empty dry, 1  
**falx, falcis f.:** grappling-hook; pruning-hook, 1  
**ferramenta, -ōrum n.:** iron tool, implement 1  
**fervefaciō, -ere, -fēcī:** make hot, boil, melt, 1  
**ferveō, -ēre, ferbuī:** glow hot; seethe, boil, 1  
**fossa, -ae f.:** ditch, trench, 2  
**funda, ae f.:** sling, 3  
**fusilis, -e:** molten, liquid, soft, 1  
**Gallicus, -a, -um:** Gallic, 1

**gladius, -ī m.:** sword, 3  
**glans, glandis m.:** slug, bullet for sling, 1  
**hora, -ae f.:** hour, 4  
**iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum:** to throw, 4  
**iaculum, -ī n.:** javelin, dart, 2  
**idōneus, -a, -um:** suitable, appropriate, 1  
**ignis, ignis, m.:** fire, 4  
**impetrō (1):** obtain, accomplish, 3  
**iustitia, -ae f.:** justice, fairness, equity, 1  
**modo:** only, merely, simply; just now, 4  
**mōs, mōris m.:** custom, manner, law, 4  
**nītor, nīti, nīsus sum:** to struggle, lean on, 1  
**nōs:** we, 1  
**parō (1):** prepare, make ready, 3  
**perficiō, -ere:** complete, accomplish, 3  
**repellō, -ere, repulī, -pulsum:** drive back,  
repulse, 1  
**respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsum:** to answer, 3  
**sagulum, -ī n.:** small military cloak, mantle 1  
**septimus, -a, -um:** seventh, 1  
**strāmentum, -ī n.:** straw; saddle, housing, 1  
**tegō, -ere, texī, tectum:** to cover, 1  
**terra, -ae f.:** earth, ground, land, 2  
**testūdo, -tūdinis f.:** tortoise, 2  
**ventus, ventī m.:** wind, 3

- 1 **haec**: *these (things)*; neuter pl.  
**ūnum**: *one (thing)*; neut. acc. sg., Caesar contrasts the multiple points of the Nervii with the single powerful point made by Cicero  
**modo**: *just, only*; an adverb modifying **ūnum**
- 2 **nōn esse**: *it is not.*; ind. discourse; “accipere... condiōnem” is the infinitive subject of esse and cōnsuētūdinem is the acc. predicate  
**ab armīs discēdere**: *to lay down their weapons*; “to depart from their weapons”  
**sī...velint...ūtantur...mittant**: *if they wish...let them employ...and send*; all pres. subj. in a mixed condition; in direct discourse the protasis velint is a fut. indicative and the apodosis verbs are imperatives or jussives, which in ind. discourse become jussives
- 3 **sē adiūtore ūtantur**: *let them employ him (as) an advocate*; ūtor governs an ablative objects, adiūtore is an abl. in the predicative position  
**spērāre**: *(that) he hoped*; i.e. Cicero hoped  
**eius**: *his*; i.e. Caesar's
- 4 **quae peti(v)erint**: *(the things) which*; pf. subj. of petō in a relative clause of characteristic, the missing antecedent is object of impertrātūrōs  
**impertātūrōs (esse)**: *that (they) would attain*; fut. infinitive; supply Nervīōs as acc. subject
- 5 **vallō...fossā**: ablative of means  
**pedum**: *of feet*; gen. of measure
- 6 **haec**: *these things*; i.e. the vallum and fossa; object of cognōverant  
**et...et**: *both...and*  
**superiōrum**: *of previous*; comparative adj.  
**ab nōbīs**: *from us*; abl. of source, the Nervii had learned their siege strategies from the Romans
- 7 **quōs...docēbantur...ab eīs**: *and by those, whom they were holding from our army as captives*; the antecedent of the relative quōs is the demonstrative eīs; capitīvōs is predicative
- nūllā...copiā**: *since there was...*; “(there being) no supply...”, the construction is either an abl. of means or an abl. absolute, causal in force
- 8 **esset**: *was*; impf. sum in a relative clause of characteristic  
**ad hunc ūsum**: *for...*; expressing purpose  
**gladiīs**: abl. of means
- 9 **circumcidere (et)...exhaurire**: asyndeton, supply conjunction immediately after first inf., lack of conjunction suggests haste or speed  
**manibus sagulisque**: abl. of means  
**nitēbantur**: deponent, governs both circumcidere and exhaurire  
**quā...ex rē**: *from which matter*
- 10 **multitūdō**: i.e. the size of the population, the number of Nervii  
**cognōsci**: pres. pass. inf.  
**minus hōris tribus**: *in less than three hours*; comparative adv. + abl. of comparison; the time construction is abl. of time within
- 11 **mīlium pedum XV**: *15,000 feet*; “15 of thousands of feet” gen. of measure  
**reliquīs diēbus**: *within...*; abl. time within
- 12 **ad altitudinem vallī**: *(in proportion) to...*; the turrēs are as tall as the valla  
**īdem**: eīdem, nom. pl. with captīvī; see line 7
- 14 **Septimō...diē**: *on...*; abl. time when  
**maximō coōrtō ventō**: abl. absolute  
**ferventēs**: modifies glandēs; pres. pple acc. pl.  
**fusili**: modifies argillā; abl. sg., i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl.
- 15 **glandēs**: *bullets*; “acorns,” this is the projectile shot from a sling (funda)  
**fervefacta iacula**: *heated javelins*; acc. d.o.
- 16 **erant tēctae**: *tectae erant*, plpf. pass. tegō  
**hae**: *these (houses)*; supply casae
- 17 **comprehēderunt**: *caught*  
**ventī**: nom. pl. subject  
**magnitūdine**: *because of...*; abl. of cause
- 18 **distulērunt**: pf. 3<sup>rd</sup> pl. differō

#### Subjunctive Conditions In Secondary Sequence: Direct and Indirect Discourse

##### Fut. Less Vivid (pres. subj., pres. subj.)

dixī “sī credās, errēs.” → dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse  
*I said, “if you should believe, you would be wrong”* *I said that, if you were to believe, you would be...*

##### Present Contrary-to-fact (impf. subj., impf. subj.)

dixī “sī crederēs, errārēs.” → dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse  
*I said, “if you believed, you would be wrong”* *I said that, if you believed, you would be wrong.\**

##### Past Contrary-to-fact (plpf. subj. plpf. subj.)

dixī “sī credissēs, errāvissēs.” → dixī sī haec credissēs, tē errātūrum fuisse.  
*I said, “if you had believed, you would have been...”* *I said that, if you had believed, you would have...\**

\*English contrafactuals do not have to change in secondary sequence.

43.3 Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sicutī partā iam atque explorātā victōriā, turrēs 1  
 testudinēsque agere et scalīs vallum ascendere coepērunt. 4. At tanta mīlitum  
 virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur  
 maximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedīmenta  
 atque omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo dēmigrandī causā 5  
 dē vallō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum  
 omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnārent. 5. Hic diēs nostrīs longē  
 gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus  
 numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vallō  
 constīpāverant recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant. 6. Paulum quidem 10  
 intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turrī adactā et contingente vāllum tertiae  
 cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō, quō stābant, locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs  
 removērunt, nūtū vocibusque hostēs, sī introīre vellent, vocāre coepērunt;  
 quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. 7. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs  
 dēturbātī, turrisque succēnsa est. 15

**ācer, ācris, ācre:** sharp, fierce, eager, bitter 2  
**adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum:** drive to, force to, 1  
**agō, agere, ēgī, āctum:** drive, lead, do, 4  
**ascendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus:** ascend, mount 2  
**audeō, -ēre, ausus sum:** dare, venture, 4  
**centurio, -iōnis m.:** centurion, 4  
**clāmor, clāmoris m.:** shout, cry, 2  
**coepī, coepisse, coeptum:** to begin, 9  
**cōnflagrō (1):** be on fire, be consumed, 1  
**constīpō (1):** to crowd together in, stuff, 1  
**contingō, -ere, tigī, tactum:** touch, border, 1  
**dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum:** depart, die, 4  
**dēmigrō (1):** to emigrate, depart, 1  
**dēturbō (1):** dislodge, drive off, 1  
**ēventus, -ūs m.:** consequence, result, issue, 2  
**explorō (1):** explore, search; gain, 1  
**flamma, ae f.:** flame, 3  
**fortūna, -ae f.:** fortune, chance, luck, 4  
**iam:** now, already, soon, 4  
**intelligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum:** understand, 2  
**introēō, -īre, īī, -itum:** go into, enter, 1  
**lapis, lapidis m.:** stone, 1  
**modo:** only, merely, simply; just now, 4

**nēmō, nullus, nēminī, -em, nullō:** no one, 3  
**nūtus, -ūs m.:** a nod, 1  
**paene:** almost, nearly, 2  
**pariō, -ere, peperī, partum:** produce, bear, 1  
**praesentia, -ae f.:** presence, 2  
**prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus:** step forward,  
 go forth, advance, 2  
**quīdam, quaedam, quiddam:** a certain, 4  
**quisquam, quidquam:** anyone, anything? 2  
**recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus:** go back, 1  
**recessus, -ūs m.:** retreat, recess, 1  
**removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus:** remove, 2  
**respicō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum:** look back to, 1  
**scāla, -ae f.:** ladder; flight of stairs, stairs, 1  
**sicut:** just as, so as, as if, 2  
**stō, -āre, steti, stātum:** stand still, stop, 3  
**succendō, -ere, -dī, censum:** to set fire under, 2  
**testūdo, -tūdinis f.:** tortoise, 2  
**torreō, -ēre, -ruī, tostum:** burn, parch, 1  
**ultimus, -a, -um:** farthest, extreme, last, 1  
**vōcō (1):** call, name, address, summon, 1  
**vōx, vōcis, f.:** voice; utterance, word, 4  
**vulnerō (1):** wound, injure, 3

- 1 **maximō clāmōre**: *with a very loud shout*; abl. of manner, cum is dropped with the noun is modified by an adjective  
**sicutī**: *as if...*  
**partā...atque explorātā**: *produced and confirmed*; PPP in an ablative absolute; pariō is the verb “to give birth” and explorō, in addition to the meaning “to search out” means “fixed,” “established” or “confirmed” in Caesar
- 2 **agere**: *to drive forward*  
**militum**: of (our) soldiers; i.e. the Romans
- 3 **ea praesentia animī**: *and such was their presence of mind*; i.e. discipline and focus  
**ut...nōn modo...dēcēderet, sed...respiceret ...pugnārent**: (*so*) *that...*; result clause; impf. subjunctives in secondary sequence  
**cum...**: *although...*; cum-clause is concessive
- 4 **torrērentur...premerentur**: *were being scorched and...were being overwhelmed*; impf. subj. in the same cum-clause  
**sua**: *their*; reflexive adjective
- 5 **impedimenta atque...fortūnās**: acc. subj. of cōnflagāre, ind. disc. governed by intellegent  
**fortūnās**: *personal items*  
**nōn modo...sed**: *not only...but (also)*
- 6 **dēmigrandī causā**: *for the sake of...*; gen. sg. gerund dēmigrō  
**nē...quidem**: *not even*; this construction emphasizes the intervening word, in this case respiceret, which is part of the result clause that started with ut in line 3
- 7 **ācerimē fortissimēque**: superlative adverbs
- 8 **nostrīs**: *for our (men)*; dat. of interest  
**longē**: *far, by far*; adverb  
**gravissimus**: *most grievous*; pred. adjective  
**hunc...ēventum, ut**: *this result, (namely) that...*; ut introduces a noun result clause in apposition to ēventum  
**eō diē**: *on this day*; eō is a demonstrative
- 9 **ut...constipāverant...dabant**: *since...*; ut + indicative, “as” is causal in force  
**sub**: *at the foot of...*; “beneath”
- 10 **prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant**: *the last (soldiers) were not giving (a means for) retreat to the first*; the rows of soldiers were crowded together on the battle line so that the soldiers on the front were pushed by those behind and could not retreat  
**paulum**: *a little*; adverbial acc.
- 11 **intermissā flammā**: abl. absolute  
**quōdam locō**: *in a certain place*; abl. place where; or “to...”dative with compound verb  
**turrī adactā et contingente**: abl. abs., turrī is fem. i-stem abl.; PPP adigō; pres. pple contingō; the turrī is an enemy’s tower
- 12 **tertia cohōrtis**: gen. sg. modifies centuriōnēs  
**ex eō...locō**: *from this place*; demonstrative  
**quō**: *in which (place)*; abl. of place where
- 13 **suōsque omnēs**: *all their men*; acc. d.o.  
**nūtū vocibusque**: *with a nod and words*; abl. of means  
**sī...vellent**: *if they wished*; ind. discourse, impf. subjunctive; in direct discourse a pres. indicative: “if you wish to enter, (enter)!”
- 14 **quōrum...nēmō**: *none of whom*; partitive gen.  
**prōgredi**: present deponent inf., prōgredior  
**ausus est**: *dared*; pf. deponent, audeō is a semi-deponent verb, otherwise active, the perfect tenses are deponent  
**ex omnī parte**: *from every direction*
- 15 **dēturbātī (sunt)**: *(the enemy) was dislodged*; pf. passive, add “sunt” parallel with succēnsa  
**turrīs**: nom. sg. feminine

### Purpose Constructions

There are a variety of ways to express purpose in Caesar's *Commentaries*. Notice how Caesar uses purpose clauses (adverbial and relative) in early books and other constructions in later ones. The dat. of purpose is often used with *sum* or with dat. interest in a double dative construction.

			examples
<b>ut/nē</b> + subj.	ut/nē audīret	<i>so that he might (not) hear...</i>	pp. 4, 6, 8, 10, 46, 70
<b>quī</b> + subj.	quī audīret	<i>who should hear...</i>	pp. 10
<b>ad</b> + gerund	ad haec audiendum	<i>for hearing...</i>	p. 10, 18
<b>ad</b> + noun + gerundive	ad haec audienda	<i>for these things to be heard</i>	pp. 2-8, 10, 18-20, 24
<b>causā</b> + gerund	audiendī causā	<i>for (the sake of) hearing...</i>	pp. 28, 40, 62
<b>causā</b> + gerundive	audiendī huius causā	<i>for the sake of this to be heard</i>	pp. 20, 58, 68
<b>accusative supine</b>	audītum	<i>to hear...</i>	pp. 22, 38, 52
<b>dative of purpose</b>	salūtī	<i>for safety</i>	p.12, 18-20, 38-44, 52, 64-6

44.1 Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī prīmīs ōrdinibus 1  
 appropinquārent, Titus Pullō et Lucius Vorēnus. 2. Hī perpetuās inter sē  
 contrōversiās habēbant, quānam anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locīs  
 summīs simultātibus contendēbant. 3. Ex hīs Pullō, cum acerrimē ad  
 mūnitiōnēs pugnārētur, ‘Quid dubitās,’ inquit, ‘Vorēne? aut quem locum 5  
 tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās?’ 4. Hic diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs  
 iudicābit.’ Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs quaeque pars  
 hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa irrumpit. 5. Nē Vorēnus quidem tum sēsē vallō  
 continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. 6. Mediocrī spatiō  
 relictō, Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitudine 10  
 prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō hunc scūtīs prōtegunt, in  
 hostem tēla ūniversī coniciunt neque dant regrediendī facultātem. 7.  
 Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullonī et verūtum in balteō dēfīgitur. 8. Āvertit hic  
 casus vāgīnam, et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum,  
 impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. 9. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et 15  
 laborantī subvenit. 10. Ad hunc sē confestim ā Pullone omnis multitudō  
 convertit: 11. illum verūto arbitrantur occīsum. Gladiō cominus rem gerit  
 Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; 12. dum cupidius  
 īnstat, in locum dēiectus inferiōrem concidit. Huic rūsus circumventō fert  
 subsidium Pullō, 13. atque ambō incolumēs, complūribus interfectīs, summā 20  
 cum laude sēsē intrā mūnitiōnēs recipiunt. 14. Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et  
 certāmine utrumque versāvit, ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtique esset,  
 neque dīiudicārī posset, uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

**ācer, ācris, ācre:** sharp, fierce, eager, bitter 2  
**ambo:** both, two together, 1  
**anteferō, -ferre, -tulī:** prefer, carry before, 2  
**appropinquō (1):** approach, draw near (dat), 3  
**auxilium, -ī n.:** help, aid, assistance, 3  
**āvertō, -ēre, āvertī, āversum:** turn away, 1  
**balteus, -ī m.:** belt, baldric; girdle, 1  
**centurio, -iōnis m.:** centurion, 4  
**certāmen, -minis n.:** contest, conflict, 1  
**circumsistō, -ere, -stetī:** to surround, 2  
**cominus:** hand to hand, in close combat, 1  
**concidō, -ere, -cidī, -casum:** to fall, 1  
**confertus, a, um:** crowded together, dense, 3  
**cōnfestim:** immediately, 4  
**contendō, -ere, -ī, -ntus:** strive; hasten, 4  
**contentio, -iōnis f.:** struggle, effort, 1  
**convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus:** turn (about), 1  
**cupidus, -a, -um:** desirous, eager, keen, 2  
**dēfīgō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum:** fasten, stick fast, 1  
**dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum:** throw down 2  
**dexter, -tera, -terum:** right, the right hand, 1

**dīiudicō (1):** judge, decide (by fighting), 1  
**dubitō (1):** waver, be uncertain, hesitate, 1  
**ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus:** lead out, 3  
**exanimō (1):** deprive of breath; kill, stun, 2  
**existimātio, -iōnis f.:** judgment, opinion, 1  
**expectō (1):** look out for, wait for, await, 3  
**extrā:** outside; beyond, outside of (acc), 1  
**fortūna, -ae f.:** fortune, chance, luck, 4  
**gladius, -ī m.:** sword, 3  
**immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** launch into, 1  
**impeditus, -a, -um:** hindered, impeded, 3  
**incolumis, -e:** unscathed, uninjured, safe, 2  
**inferus, -a, -um:** below, lower, 3  
**inimīcus, -a, -um:** hostile, unfriendly, 4  
**inquam:** say, 4  
**instō, -āre, -stetī,** press on, take a position, 1  
**intrā:** within, among (+ acc.), 3  
**irrupō, -ere, -rupī, -ruptum:** burst in, 1  
**iūdicō (1):** judge, decide, assess, 2  
**labōrō (1):** work, toil, labor, strive, 2  
**laus, laudis f.:** praise, adulation, 1

**mediocris, -e:** moderate, ordinary, 1  
**moror, -ārī, -ātus:** delay, linger; detain, 3  
**occidō, -ere, occidī, occisus:** kill, cut down 4  
**percutiō, -ere, -cussī, cussum:** strike hard, 1  
**perpetuus, -a, -um:** constant, everlasting, 4  
**pīlum, -ī n.:** pilum, javelin, 3  
**prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum;** proceed, 3  
**prōcurrō, -ere, currī, cursum:** run forward, 2  
**prōpellō, -ere, -pellī, -pulsum:** drive forward  
 or push away, 3  
**prōtegō, -ere, texī, tectum:** to cover over, 1  
**quīnam quānam quodnam:** which, what, 1  
**regredior, -ī, regressus:** step or go back 1  
**rursus:** again, backward, back, 4  
**scūtum, -ī m.:** shield, 2  
**sīc:** thus, in this way, 3

**simultās, -tātis f.:** clash, feud, rivalry, 1  
**spatium, -ī n.:** space, room, extent, 4  
**subveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum:** come up to,  
 aid, relieve, 2  
**succurrō, -ere, :** run under, undergo, occur, 1  
**Titus, -ī m.:** Titus, 4  
**trāiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum:** pierce, cast across, 2  
**transfigō, -ere, -fixī, fixum:** pierce, thrust, 1  
**tuus, -a, -um:** your, yours, 1  
**ūniversus, -a, -um:** all together, whole, 3  
**uter, utra, utrum:** each or one (of two), 2  
**vāgīna, -ae f.:** sheath, scabbard, 1  
**vereor, -ērī, -itus sum:** be afraid, fear; revere, 4  
**versor (1):** be engaged in, move about, deal with, 3  
**verūtum, -ī n.:** javelin, 2  
**vir, virī m.:** man, 4

1 **Erant:** *there were...*

**prīmīs ōrdinibus:** *the front ranks;* in battle at regular intervals the front row was relieved by the second row and slipped to the rear; Pullo and Vorenius are about take over the first row

3 **quīnam anteferrētur:** *who was to be preferred;* “who was better,” an ind. question in apposition to contrōversīās, likely impf. deliberative subj.  
**omnibusque annīs:** *every year;* abl. time when  
**dē locīs summīs:** *concerning the highest positions;* i.e. military promotions and honors

4 **simultātibus:** *in...;* abl. of respect  
**ācerimē:** superlative adverb  
**ad:** *near*

5 **Quid:** *Why...?*

**pugnārētur:** *they were fighting;* “it was fought (by them),” an impersonal impf. passive  
**Vorēne:** *Vorenius;* vocative direct address  
**quem locum:** *what (better) place;* i.e. “what better opportunity” relative adjective

6 **tuae probandae virtūtis:** *of proving your valor;* “of your valor going to be proven,” a gerundive modifying virtūtis; through a gerund-gerundive flip a gerund with virtūtis as object

7 **haec:** *these things;* acc. obj. of plpf. subj. dīcō; Pullo is the subject of all the following verbs  
**quaque pars...est vīsa:** *and what(ever) side seemed...;* videor, here pf. pass. is translated as the linking verb “seems,” missing antecedent is the object of irrumpit

8 **cōnfertissima:** superlative pred. adj. governed by vīsa est and modifying the feminine sg. pars  
**nē...quidem:** *not even...;* this construction emphasizes the intervening word  
**vallō:** *within the wall;* abl. place where

9 **veritus:** *having come to fear...;* pf. dep. pple

**omnium exīstimātiōnem:** object of veritus  
**mediocrī spatiō relicto:** *a usual interval (of time) having been forsaken;* i.e. a short time, having intervened; abl. absolute, i-stem abl.

10 **in hostēs:** *against the enemy*

**ūnum:** *one (enemy soldier)*

11 **prōcurrentem:** pres. pple. modifies ūnum  
**quō percussō et exanimātō:** *this one...;* abl. abs. with PPP percutiō, exanimō; a relative where English prefers a demonstrative  
**hunc:** *this one;* hunc refers to the same as quō

12 **regrediendī:** gerund, gen. sg. regredior

13 **Pullonī:** *Pullo's;* dat. poss. or dat. of interest  
**hic casus:** *this event;* the scabbard is turned in such a way that it is difficult to draw a sword

14 **gladium ēdūcere cōnantī:** *for the one trying...;* pres. pple cōnōr

15 **illī, laborantī:** dat. objects of compound verbs

17 **illum occisum (esse):** *that that one was killed*

18 **ūnō interfectō:** abl. absolute

**cupidius:** comparative adverb, cupidus

19 **īnstat:** *presses on;* “takes a stand”

**dēiectus:** *having slipped onto a lower ground*

**huic...circumventō:** *to this one...;* dat. i.o.

21 **sēsē...recipiunt:** *retreat;* common idiom

22 **utrumque versāvit:** *engaged in both men*

**ut...esset, posset, vidērētur:** result clause

**alter alteri inimicus:** *one, hostile to the other,*  
**auxiliō salūtique esset:** *would serve as help and refuge;* “for...,” dat. purpose

23 **uter utrī:** *each one to the other;* dat. sg.

**virtūte:** *in valor;* abl. of respect

**anteferendus:** *to be preferred;* “going/worthy to be preferred” gerundive, a predicate of the linking verb vidērētur, “seemed” cf. line 3

45.1 Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppugnātiō, et maximē quod 1  
 magnā parte mīlitum cōfectā vulneribus, rēs ad paucitātem defensōrum  
 pervēnerat, tantō crebriōrēs litterae nūntiūque ad Caesarem mittēbantur;  
 quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in conspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū  
 necabātur. 2. Erat ūnus intus Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, 5  
 quī ā prīmā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem  
 praestiterat. 3. Hic servō spē libertātis magnīsque persuādet praemiīs, ut  
 litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. 4. Hās ille in iaculō illigātās effert et Gallus inter  
 Gallōs sine ūllā suspiciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. 5. Ab eō dē  
 periculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cognōscitur. 10

46.1 Caesar, acceptīs litterīs, hōrā circiter XI diēi statim nūntium in  
 Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum quaestōrem mittit, cuius hīberna aberant ab eō  
 milia passuum XXV; 2. iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficiscī celeriterque ad  
 sē venīre. 3. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad Gaium Fabium lēgātum  
 mittit, ut in Atrebātium finēs legiōnem adducat, quā sibi iter faciendum 15  
 sciēbat. 4. Scribit Labiēnō, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere posset, cum legiōne  
 ad finēs Nerviorum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat  
 longius, non putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter quadringentōs ex proximīs  
 hibernīs colligit.

**addūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum:** draw/lead to, 4  
**asper, aspera, asperum:** rough, harsh, violent, 1  
**Atrebas, Atrebātis, m.:** Atrebrates, 3  
**Bellovacī, -ōrum m.:** Bellovaci (in Belgīs), 1  
**colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum:** gather, collect, 1  
**commodum, -ī n.:** convenience, advantage, interest, 1  
**conficiō, -ere:** to exhaust, finish, 4  
**conspectus, -ūs, m.:** look, sight, view, 2  
**creber, -bra, -bum:** crowded, frequent, 1  
**cruciātus, -ūs m.:** torture, torment, 2  
**dēfensor, -ōris m.:** defender, protector, 1  
**dēprehendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus:** seize, catch, 1  
**effero, -ferre, -tulī, ēlātus:** raise, lift up 4  
**exeō, -īre, -ī (ivī), -itus:** go out, 4  
**exspectō (1):** look out for, wait for, await, 3  
**Fabius, -ī m.:** Fabius, 3  
**fidēs, eī f.:** faith, honor, 4  
**Gaius, -ī m.:** Gaius, 4  
**honestus, -a, -um:** respectable, honorable, 1  
**hora, -ae f.:** hour, 4  
**iaculum, -ī n.:** javelin, dart, 2  
**inligō, -āre, -āvī, illigātum:** tie or bind on, 1

**intus:** within, inside, 1  
**libertās, -tātis f.:** freedom, liberation, 2  
**M.:** Marcus, 3  
**medius -a -um:** in the middle of, 3  
**nascor, nascī, nātus sum:** be born, grow, 3  
**necō (1):** kill, slay, destroy, 1  
**nōmen, nōminis n.:** name, 2  
**obsidio, -iōnis f.:** siege, blockade, 2  
**paucitās, -tātis f. (1):** fewness, scarcity, 3  
**perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī:** flee, take refuge, 1  
**putō (1):** to think, imagine, 3  
**quadringentī:** four hundred, 2  
**quaestor, -oris m.:** quaestor, 3  
**sciō, -īre, -īvī (ī), -ītus:** know (how), 2  
**scribō, -ere, -scripsī, scriptum:** write, 2  
**servus, -ī, m.:** slave, 1  
**statim:** immediately, at once, 4  
**suspicio, -ciōnis f.:** mistrust, suspicion, 4  
**versor (1):** be engaged in, move about, deal with, 3  
**Verticō, -ōnis m.:** Vertico, 1  
**vulnus, -eris n.:** wound, blow, 3

- 1 **Quantō...gravior...tantō crēbriōrēs**: *the more grievous...the more frequent*; “by as much...by so much,” correlatives, ablative of the degree of difference with comparative adjective  
**in diēs**: *daily*  
**maximē**: *especially*; “very greatly”  
**magnā...vulneribus**: ablative absolute
- 3 **pervēnerat**: *had arrived at*; *rēs* is subject  
**nuntīi**: *messengers*  
**quōrum pars**: *some of which (messengers)*; partitive gen.,
- 4 **dēprehēnsa**: *taken*; modifies fem. sg. pars
- 5 **Erat**: *there was*  
**intus**: *within*; i.e. within Cicero’s camp  
**nōmine**: *by name*; “in name,” abl. of respect  
**locō...honestō**: *in an honorable station*; status  
**eī**: *to him*; i.e. to Cicero, dat. sg.
- 6 **praestiterat**: *had shown, had performed*
- 7 **Hic**: *this one*; i.e. Vertico  
**servō**: *slave*; dat. i.o. of *persuādeō*  
**spē, praemiis**: abl. means  
**ut...dēferat**: *that...*; ind. command with present subj. governed by *persuādet*
- 8 **ille**: *that one*; i.e. the slave  
**hās**: *these*; fem. pl. antecedent *litterae*  
**Gallus...versātus**: *as a Gaul engaged...*
- 9 **ab eō**: *by him*; by the slave, abl. of agent
- 10 **cognōscitur**: *he learned*; “it is known by him”
- 11 **acceptis litteris**: abl. absolute  
**hōrā...XI**: *at around the 11<sup>th</sup> hour*; time when, approximately 5 p.m.  
**diēi**: partitive genitive
- 12 **cuius**: gen. relative pronoun *quī, quae, quod*  
**aberant ab eō**: *were...away from him*; i.e. from Caesar
- 13 **milia passuum XXV**: *25 miles*; “thousands of paces,” acc. of extent of space  
**mediā nocte**: abl. of time when  
**proficisci**: pres. deponent inf.
- 14 **cum nūntiō**: *with the messenger*; or “with (the arrival of) the message”  
**Alterum**: *another*; modifies *lēgātum*
- 15 **ut...adducat**: *that...*; ind. command with pres. subj.  
**finēs**: *territory*  
**quā**: *where*  
**sibi iter faciendum (esse)**: *that a journey had to be made by him*; “a journey was going to be made by him” ind. discourse, a passive periphrastic (gerundive + form of sum) with dat. of agent expressing necessity or obligation
- 16 **Labiēnō**: dat. i.o.  
**sī...posset**: *if*; impf. subj. *possum*  
**reī publicae commōdō**: *for the interest of the republic*; dat. purpose or, if *reī* is dat. not gen., double dative (dat. of interest & dat. purpose)  
**(ut) cum legiōne veniat**: *that...*; ind. command with pres. subj. governed by *scribit*  
**finēs**: *territory*
- 17 **exercitūs**: gen. sg.  
**paulō**: *a little*; “by a little,” abl. degree of difference with comparative *longius*
- 18 **longius**: *farther*; comparative adverb  
**expectandam (esse)**: *must be waited for*; “is going to be waited for,” passive periphrastic (gerundive + esse) expresses obligation or necessity; add *esse*, in indirect disc. governed by *putat*; fem. sg. *partem* is acc. subject

### Compound Verbs: the Importance of Prefixes

Notice how the spelling of many prefixes, especially *ad-* and *con-*, change through assimilation and assume the consonant at the begins of the verb. Compounds often govern a dative instead of an accusative object.

a/ab-	away from	<b>mittō, -ere</b> : send, 20	<b>cēdō, ere</b> : withdraw, move, 2
ad-	to, toward	<b>āmittō</b> : lose, let go away, 2	<b>accēdō</b> : approach, 5
con-	together with	<b>admittō</b> : admit, allow, 2	<b>concedō</b> : withdraw, yield, 2
dē-	from, down from	<b>committō</b> : begin, entrust, 4	<b>dēcedō</b> : depart, withdraw, 4
dis-	different directions	<b>dēmittō</b> : send down, sink, 1	<b>discēdō</b> : go away, depart, 9
ē/ex-	out from	<b>dīmittō</b> : send away, 3	<b>excēdō</b> : go out, depart, 3
in-	in, on, into	<b>ēmittō</b> : send off, 1	<b>incēdō</b> : walk, march, 0
inter-	between	<b>immittō</b> : launch into, 1	<b>intercedō</b> : come between, 1
per-	through	<b>intermittō</b> : interrupt, leave off, 5	
prae-	before, ahead	<b>permittō</b> : let through, allow, 0	<b>praecedō</b> : surpass, go ahead, 1
pro-	forth, in advance	<b>praemittō</b> : send ahead, 2	<b>prōcedō</b> : go forth, 3
re-	back, again	<b>prōmittō</b> : send forth, undertake, 0	<b>recēdō</b> : go back, withdraw, 1
sub-	(up from) under	<b>remittō</b> : send back, 4	<b>succēdō</b> : go up, approach, 3
		<b>submitto</b> : send up, 1	

47.1 Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū certior factus eō 1  
 diē milia passuum XX procēdit. 2. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit  
 legiōnemque attribuit, quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, obsidēs cīvitātum,  
 litterās pūblicās frūmentumque omne quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā  
 dēvexerat relinquebat. 3. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus 5  
 in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. 4. Labiēnus, interitū Sabīnī et caede  
 cohortium cognitā, cum omnēs ad eum Treverōrum cōpiae vēnissent,  
 veritus, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, ut hostium  
 impetum sustinēre posset, praesertim quōs recentī victōriā efferri scīret,  
 litterās Caesarī remittit, quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hībernīs ēductūrus 10  
 esset; rem gestam in Eburiōnibus perscrībit; docet omnēs equitātūs  
 peditātūsque cōpiās Treverōrum tria milia passuum longē ab suīs castrīs  
 cōnsēdisse.

**antecursor, -ōris m.:** scout, advanced guard, 1  
**attribuō, -ere, -uī, -utum:** allot, assign to, add, 1  
**caedēs, caedis f.:** murder, slaughter, killing 2  
**consīdeō, -ēre, -sēdī:** to sit down, settle, 2  
**dēvehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectum:** carry away, 1  
**doceō, -ēre, -uī, -ctus:** teach, tell, 4  
**ēducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus:** lead out, 3  
**effero, -ferre, -tulī, ēlātus:** raise, lift up 4  
**Fabius, -ī m.:** Fabius, 3  
**fuga, -ae f.:** flight, haste, exile, speed, 3  
**hiems, hiemis f.:** winter, storm, 4  
**hora, -ae f.:** hour, 4  
**impetus, -ūs m.:** attack, onset, assault, 7  
**interitus, -ūs m.:** destruction, annihilation, 1  
**ita:** so, thus, 7  
**moror, -ārī, -ātus:** delay, linger; detain, 3

**occurrō, -ere:** run to meet, attack, 2  
**peditātus, -ūs m.:** infantry, 3  
**perscrībō, -ere, -scripsī:** describe thoroughly, 1  
**praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** set (acc) over (dat),  
 put (acc) in charge over (dat), 2  
**praesertim:** especially, particularly, 2  
**prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum;** proceed, 3  
**recens, recentis adj.:** new, fresh, recent, 1  
**remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** send back, 4  
**Samarobrīva, -ae f.:** Samarobriva, 2  
**sciō, -īre, -īvī (ī), -ītus:** know (how), 2  
**similis, simile:** similar to, like (dat.), 1  
**tolerō (1):** endure, sustain, bear, support, 1  
**Trēveri, -ōrum m.:** Treveri (Germanic), 4  
**vereor, -ērī, -ītus:** be afraid, fear; reverse, 4

- 1 **Hōrā...tertiā**: *at...*; abl. of time when  
**ab antecursōribus**: abl. of agent  
**certior factus**: *having been informed*; “having been made more certain,” a common idiom in Caesar, certior is a comparative adj., here a predicate of PPP of faciō
- 2 **eō diē**: *on that day*; time when, demonstrative  
**milia passuum XX**: *for 20 miles*; “twenty thousands of paces,” acc. of extent of space  
**praeficit**: *put (acc) in charge over (dat.)*
- 3 **quod**: *because...*
- 4 **quod...dēvexerat**: *which...*; relative pronoun, frūmentum is the antecedent  
**eō**: *to there*; “to that place,” adverb  
**tolerandae hiemis**: gerund-gerundive flip, translate the gerundive as a gerund and gen. hiemis as an acc. object of tolerandae; the entire construction is an obj. of the preposition causā
- 5 **ut**: *as*; ut + indicative, as often “as” or “when”  
**imperātum erat**: *it...*; impersonal plpf. pass.  
**multum**: *much*; inner acc. or adverbial acc.
- 6 **interitū...cognitā**: abl. absolute
- 7 **cum...vēnisset**: *when...*; plpf. subjunctive  
**cōpiae**: *troops*; modified by omnēs
- 8 **veritus...ut...posset**: *having begun to fear that he would not be able*; inceptive pf. dep. pple  
 vereor governs a fearing clause (nē - that, ut - that not) with impf. subj. in secondary seq.  
**fugae**: *to flight*; governed by similem
- 8 **sī...fēcisset**: *if he had made*; plpf. subjunctive, introducing a mixed contrafactual condition
- 9 **quōs...scīret**: *since he knew that those were elated by their recent victory*; quōs + impf. subjunctive is a relative clause causal in sense, equivalent to a cum-clause (quōs = cum eōs) causal in sense; cf. quī in V.33; pass. inf. efferō  
**recentī**: i-stem ablative with victōriā
- 10 **quantō...periculō**: (*stating*) *with how much danger...*; introducing an ind. question with an implicit verb of speaking in “litterās... remittit”  
**ēductūrus esset**: *would lead out*; “was going to lead out,” fut. periphrastic (future pple + sum) in primary sequence which in dir. disc would be “ēductūrus erat”
- 11 **gestam**: *carried out*; PPP gerō  
**in Eburionibus**: *among the Eburiones*  
**omnēs...copiās**: *that all...*; acc. subject of pf. infinitive cōnsēdisse in ind. discourse
- 12 **tria milia passuum**: *three miles*; “three thousand paces,” acc. of extent of space  
**longē**: *far*; adverb

### Deponent Verbs in the Readings

- adgredior, -ī, aggressus sum**: attack, 1  
**ēgredior, -ī, -gressum**: go out, disembark, 5  
**regredior, -ī, regressum**: step or go back 1  
**adipiscor, -ī, adeptum**: get, obtain, reach, 1  
**arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātum**: to judge, 10  
**auxilior, -ārī, auxiliātum**: to help, assist, 1  
**confiteor, -ērī, -fessum**: admit, reveal, 1  
**cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātum**: to try, 6  
**cunctor, -ārī, -ātum**: to delay, hesitate 1  
**frūmentor, -ārī**: to forage, fetch corn, 1  
**hortor, -ārī, hortātum**: encourage, urge, 2  
**adhortor, -ārī, -ātum**: encourage, urge on, 1  
**cohortor, -ārī, cohortātum**: encourage, incite, 3  
**lābor, lābī, lapsum**: glide, slide, slip, 1  
**loquor, -ī, locūtum**: speak, say, 2  
**colloquor, -quī, -locūtum**: to converse, 4  
**medeor, -ērī**: heal, cure; assist, alleviate, 1  
**mercor, -ārī, mercātum**: to trade, traffic, 1  
**moderor, -ārī, -ātum**: restrain, regulate, 1  
**molior, -īrī, molītum**: set into motion, stir, 1  
**moror, -ārī, -ātum**: delay, linger; detain, 3  
**nanciscor, nanciscī, nactum**: obtain, meet, 1  
**nascor, nascī, nātum**: be born, grow, 3  
**nītor, nītī, nīsus sum**: to struggle, lean on, 1  
**contestor, -ārī, -ātum**: to call as witness, 1  
**orior, -īrī, ortum**: arise, rise, spring, 3  
**adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum**: rise up, attack, 2  
**coōrior, -īrī, coōrtum**: arise, break out, 2  
**patior, -ī, passum**: suffer, endure; allow, 2  
**polliceor, -cērī, -cītum**: promise, offer, 2  
**potior, -īrī, -ītum**: gain, win (*abl.*), 2  
**proelior, -ārī, -ātum**: to give battle, fight, 1  
**proficiscor, -ī, -fectum**: set out, depart, 23  
**profiteor, -ērī, -fessum**: profess, declare, 1  
**prosequor, sequī, secūtum**: follow, pursue 1  
**queror, querī, questum**: complain, lament, 1  
**sequor, -ī, secūtum**: follow, pursue, 4  
**consequor, -ī, secūtum**: follow; pursue 1  
**exsequor, sequī, secūtum**: follow/carry out 1  
**insequor, -sequī, -secūtum**: follow, ensue, 1  
**subsequor, -ī, secūtum**: follow after, behind 7  
**suspicior, -ārī, suspicātum**: to suspect, 3  
**ulciscor, -ī, ultum**: avenge, take vengeance 1  
**ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum**: use, employ (*abl.*), 5  
**vagor, -ārī, -ātum**: wander, roam to and fro, 1  
**vereor, -ērī, -ītum**: be afraid, fear; reverse, 4

48.1 Caesar, cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsī opiniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad 1  
 duās redierat, tamen ūnum commūnis salūtis auxilium in celeritāte ponēbat.  
 Vēnit magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnēs. 2. Ibi ex captīvīs cognoscit, quae  
 apud Cicerōnem gerantur, quantōque in periculō rēs sit. 3. Tum cuidam ex  
 equitibus Gallīs magnīs praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistolam 5  
 dēferat. 4. Hanc Graecīs conscriptam litterīs mittit, nē, interceptā epistolā,  
 nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōscantur. 5. Sī adīre non possit, monet ut  
 trāgulam cum epistolā ad āmentum deligātā intrā mūnitiōnem castrōrum  
 abiciat. 6. In litterīs scribit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore;  
 hortātur ut pristīnam virtūtem retineat. 7. Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat 10  
 praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. 8. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit neque ab nostrīs  
 bīduō animadversa tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōspicitur, dempta ad  
 Cicerōnem dēfertur. 9. Ille perlectam in conventū mīlitum recitat  
 maximāque omnēs laetitiā adfcit. 10. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul  
 vidēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit. 15

**abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum:** throw away, 2  
**adeō, -īre, ī(v(ī, itus):** approach, encounter, 2  
**adfcio, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** affect, afflict, 3  
**adhaereō, -ēre, -haesī:** cling to, stick to, 1  
**adsum, -esse, -fuī:** be present, assist, (dat.), 3  
**āmentum, -ī n.:** strap, leather thong, 1  
**auxilium, -ī n.:** help, aid, assistance, 3  
**biduum, -ī n.:** a period of two days, 2  
**captīvus, -a, -um:** prisoner, captive, 3  
**conscribō, -ere, -scripsī:** enlist, enroll, 2  
**conspiciō, -īre:** catch sight of, perceive, behold 1  
**conventus, -ūs m.:** meeting, assembly, 1  
**dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** fail, give out, 3  
**dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum:** throw down, dislodge, 1  
**dēligō (1):** to tie down, fasten, 2  
**dēmō, -ere, dempsī, demptum:** take down, 1  
**dubitātiō, -tiōnis f.:** wavering, uncertainty, 1  
**epistula, -ae f.:** letter, missive, 3  
**expellō, ere, pulī, pulsum:** drive out, expel 2  
**fūmus, -ī m.:** smoke, vapor, steam, 1

**Graecus, -a, -um:** Greek, 2  
**hortor, -ārī, hortātum:** encourage, urge, 2  
**incendium, -ī n.:** fire, conflagration, 1  
**incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptum:** begin, 1  
**intrā:** within, among (+ acc.), 3  
**laetitia, -ae f.:** gladness, joy, delight, 1  
**moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum:** to warn, advise, 2  
**opiniō, -niōnis f.:** opinion, thought, belief, 2  
**perlegō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum:** survey, scan, 1  
**praecipio, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** receive in  
 advance, instruct, admonish, 2  
**pristinus, -a, -um:** former, previous, earlier 2  
**procul:** far, from a distance, from afar, 3  
**quīdam, quaedam, quiddam:** a certain, 4  
**recitō (1):** recite, read aloud, 1  
**redeō, -īre, -īvī:** go back, return, 1  
**retineō, -ēre, -uī, tentum:** hold back, keep, 2  
**scribō, -ere, -scripsī, scriptum:** write, 2  
**trāgula, -ae f.:** tragula (a Gallic javelin) 3  
**vereor, -ērī, -itus:** be afraid, fear; revere, 4

- 1 **cōnsiliō...probātō**: abl. absolute  
**etsī**: *even if...*; i.e. although  
**opiniōne**: *from the hope for...*; “from the thought,” abl. of separation; Caesar had hoped for three legions but received only two  
**dēiectus**: *disappointed*; i.e. dejected, dispirited
- 2 **duās**: *duās legiōnēs*  
**redierat**: plpf. *redeō*  
**ūnum...auxilium**: *a single source*
- 3 **magnīs itineribus**: *in long marches*; i.e. forced marches; 25-30 miles per day  
**finēs**: *borders*  
**quae...gerantur**: *what (things) are carried on*; ind. question with pres. subjunctive
- 4 **apud Cicerōnem**: *in Cicero’s camp*  
**quantō in...**: *in how great...*; cf. p. 68, (V.47.4)  
ind. question with pres. subj. of sum  
**cuidam**: *a certain...*; cui-dam, dat. indirect obj. quīdam of persuādet
- 5 **utī...dēferat**: *that...*; utī is an alternative to ut, here in an indirect command governed by persuādeō; pres. subj. dēferō
- 6 **hanc**: *this (letter)*  
**Graecīs...litterīs**: *with Greek letters*; in Greek or perhaps Latin in Greek script  
**nē...cognōscantur**: *that...may not...*; negative purpose clause; pres. subj. in primary sequence
- 7 **possit**: *he is able*; a subordinate clause in ind. discourse, replacing indicative with pres. subj.  
**ut...abiciat**: *that...*; ind. command governed by monet; pres. subj. in primary sequence
- 8 **āmentum**: a leather loop on a javelin that allows for better aim and distance when the javelin is thrown
- 9 **sē...adfore**: *that he will be present...*; adfore is an alternative for adfutūrum esse, fut. inf. of adsum  
**profectum**: PPP proficīscor
- 10 **ut...retineat**: *that...*; ind. command  
**veritus**: *having begun to fear*; inceptive pf. dep. pple vereor governs periculum as object  
**ut erat praeceptum**: *as it had been instructed*; ut + indicative
- 11 **mittit**: *launches*; i.e. throws  
**haec**: *this (javelin)*; supply nom. sg. trāgula  
**cāsū**: *by chance*
- ab nostrīs**: *by our (men)*; abl. agent
- 12 **bīduō**: *in...*; abl. time when or within  
**animadversa**: PPP modifying haec (trāgula)  
**tertiō diē**: abl. time when
- 13 **perlectam (epistulam)...recitat**: *that one recites the letter, once read through...*; English prefers two main verbs where Latin often prefers to make the first of two actions into a PPP: “that one read through the letter and then recited it...”
- 14 **adficit**: *affects (acc) with (abl.)*; abl. means
- 15 **quae rēs**: *a matter which...*; quae modifies fem. sg. rēs, the antecedent of the relative clause, in apposition to fūmī (or the entire clause)

### The Remainder of Book V

Cicero and his camp are hopeful when they see the fires as a sign of Caesar’s approach. Confronted with 60,000 Gauls, Caesar forms a camp. After a brief skirmish, he pretends to retreat into his fortifications, and when the Gauls follow him, he orders his cavalry and then his foot soldiers to rush out of the gates and attack the enemy. The Gauls are taken by surprise, and those who are not immediately killed flee into the nearby swamps and forests.

Caesar hastens to Cicero’s camp, where he learns that nine of every ten soldiers has been wounded in the siege. Caesar praises both Cicero and the legion and informs Cicero about the fate of Sabinus and Cotta’s legion and in particular the recklessness of Sabinus.

When Labienus, encamped 60 miles away, learns of Caesar’s victory, Indutiomarus, leader of the Treveri, initially decides to stop preparations to attack Labienus and to withdraw. But as other Gauls learn about Sabinus’ defeat and begin to make preparations to fight, Indutiomarus returns with a much larger force. With the aid of cavalry, Labienus is able to surprise the Gauls and kill Indutiomarus. After this episode the Gauls return to their homes, and the uprising comes to an end.

	<u>1st Declension</u>		<u>2nd Declension (m.)</u>		<u>2nd Declension (n.)</u>	
Nom.	<i>copia</i>	<i>copiae</i>	<i>legatus</i>	<i>legatī</i>	<i>proelium</i>	<i>proelia</i>
Gen.	<i>copiae</i>	<i>copiārum</i>	<i>legatī</i>	<i>legatōrum</i>	<i>proeliī</i>	<i>proeliōrum</i>
Dat.	<i>copiae</i>	<i>copiīs</i>	<i>legatō</i>	<i>legatīs</i>	<i>proeliō</i>	<i>proeliīs</i>
Acc.	<i>copiam</i>	<i>copiās</i>	<i>legatum</i>	<i>legatōs</i>	<i>proelium</i>	<i>proelia</i>
Abl.	<i>copiā</i>	<i>copiīs</i>	<i>legatō</i>	<i>legatīs</i>	<i>proeliō</i>	<i>proeliīs</i>
	<u>3rd Declension (m/f)</u>				<u>3rd Declension (n.)</u>	
Nom.	<i>mīles</i>	<i>mīlites</i>			<i>iter</i>	<i>itinerā</i>
Gen.	<i>mīlitis</i>	<i>mīlitum</i>			<i>itineris</i>	<i>itinerum</i>
Dat.	<i>mīlitī</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>			<i>itinerī</i>	<i>itineribus</i>
Acc.	<i>mīlitem</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>			<i>iter</i>	<i>itinerā</i>
Abl.	<i>mīlite</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>			<i>itinere</i>	<i>itineribus</i>
	<u>4th Declension (m/f)</u>				<u>4th Declension (n.)</u>	
Nom.	<i>manus</i>	<i>manūs</i>			<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
Gen.	<i>manūs</i>	<i>manuum</i>			<i>cornūs</i>	<i>cornuum</i>
Dat.	<i>manuī</i>	<i>manibus</i>			<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornuibus</i>
Acc.	<i>manum</i>	<i>manūs</i>			<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
Abl.	<i>manū</i>	<i>manibus</i>			<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornuibus</i>
	<u>5th Declension (m/f)</u>					
Nom.	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>				
Gen.	<i>rēī</i>	<i>rērum</i>				
Dat.	<i>rēī</i>	<i>rēbus</i>				
Acc.	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>				
Abl.	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>				

---

### Selected Pronouns

Nom.	<i>is</i>	<i>he</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>she</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>it</i>
Gen.	<i>eius</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>her</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>its</i>
Dat.	<i>eī</i>	<i>to/for him</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>to/for her</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>to/for it</i>
Acc.	<i>eum</i>	<i>him</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>her</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>it</i>
Abl.	<i>eō</i>	<i>with/from him</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>with/from her</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>with/from it</i>
Nom.	<i>eī</i>	<i>they</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>they</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>they</i>
Gen.	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>their</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>their</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>their</i>
Dat.	<i>eīs</i>	<i>to/for them</i>	<i>eīs</i>	<i>to/for them</i>	<i>eīs</i>	<i>to/for them</i>
Acc.	<i>eōs</i>	<i>them</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>them</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>them</i>
Abl.	<i>eīs</i>	<i>with/from them</i>	<i>eīs</i>	<i>with/from them</i>	<i>eīs</i>	<i>with/from them</i>

*\*is, ea, id* is a demonstrative and in Caesar is often translated as “this/that” in the singular and “these/those” in the plural.

---

Nom.	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>who, which, that</i>
Gen.	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>whose, of whom/which</i>
Dat.	<i>cuī</i>	<i>cuī</i>	<i>cuī</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>to whom/which</i>
Acc.	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>whom, which, that</i>
Abl.	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>by/with/from whom/which</i>

Nom.	ille	illa	illud	<i>that</i>	hic	haec	hoc	<i>this</i>
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	<i>of that</i>	huius	huius	huius	<i>of this</i>
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	<i>to/for that</i>	huic	huic	huic	<i>to/for this</i>
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	<i>that</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	<i>this</i>
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	<i>with/from that</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	<i>b/w/f this</i>
<hr/>								
Nom.	illī	illae	illa	<i>those</i>	hī	hae	haec	<i>these</i>
Gen.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum	<i>of those</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	<i>of these</i>
Dat.	illīs	illīs	illīs	<i>to those</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	<i>to these</i>
Acc.	illōs	illās	illa	<i>those</i>	hōs	hās	haec	<i>these</i>
Abl.	illīs	illīs	illīs	<i>with/from those</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	<i>with/from these</i>

	reflexive pronoun	possessive reflexive adjective						
Nom.	---	suus	sua	suum	suī	suae	sua	
Gen.	suī	suī	suae	suī	suōrum	suārum	suōrum	
Dat.	sibi	suō	suae	suō	suīs	suīs	suīs	
Acc.	sē	suum	suam	suum	suōs	suās	sua	
Abl.	sē	suō	suā	suō	suīs	suīs	suīs	

### Adjectives and Adverbs

Decl.	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
1 <sup>st</sup> /2 <sup>nd</sup>	altus, -a, -um <i>high (deep)</i>	altior, altius <i>higher (deeper)</i>	altissimus, -a, -um <i>highest, very high (deepest)</i>
3 <sup>rd</sup>	fortis, forte <i>brave</i>	fortior, fortius <i>braver, more brave</i>	fortissimus, -a, -um <i>bravest, most brave, very brave</i>
1 <sup>st</sup> /2 <sup>nd</sup>	altē <i>deeply</i>	altius <i>more deeply</i>	altissimē <i>very deeply</i>
3 <sup>rd</sup>	fortiter <i>bravely</i>	fortius <i>more bravely</i>	fortissimē <i>very bravely</i>

### Irregular Adjectives and Adverbs

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um <i>good</i>	melior, melius <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um <i>best</i>
magnus, -a, -um <i>great</i>	maior, maius <i>greater</i>	maximus, -a, -um <i>greatest</i>
parvus, -a, -um <i>small</i>	minor, minus <i>smaller</i>	minimus, -a, -um <i>smallest</i>
multus, -a, -um <i>much</i>	---, plus <i>more</i>	plurimus, -a, -um <i>most</i>

**amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum: to love**

	active		translation	passive		translation
<b>Indicative</b>						
Pres.	amō	amāmus	<i>I love</i>	amor	amāmur	<i>I am (being) loved</i>
	amās	amātis		amāris	amāminī	
	amat	amant		amātur	amantur	
Impf.	amābam	amābāmus	<i>I was loving</i>	amābar	amābāmur	<i>I was (being) loved</i>
	amābās	amābātis		amābāris	amābāminī	
	amābat	amābant		amābātur	amābantur	
Fut.	amābō	amābimus	<i>I will love</i>	amābor	amābimur	<i>I will be loved</i>
	amābis	amābitis		amāberis	amābiminī	
	amābit	amābunt		amābitur	amābuntur	
Perf.	amāvī	amāvimus	<i>I have loved</i>	amāta sum	amātae sumus	<i>I have been loved</i>
	amāvistī	amāvistis		amāta es	amātae estis	<i>was loved</i>
	amāvit	amāverunt		amāta est	amātae sunt	
Plpf.	amāveram	amāverāmus	<i>I had loved</i>	amāta eram	amātae erāmus	<i>I had been loved</i>
	amāverās	amāverātis		amāta erās	amātae erātis	
	amāverat	amāverant		amāta erat	amātae erant	
Fut. Pf	amāverō	amāverimus	<i>I will have loved</i>	amāta erō	amātae erimus	<i>I will have been loved</i>
	amāveris	amāveritis	<i>loved</i>	amāta eris	amātae eritis	<i>loved</i>
	amāverit	amāverint		amāta erit	amātae erunt	

**Subjunctive**

Pres.	amem	amēmus	same as	amer	amēmur	same as
	amēs	amētis	indicative	amēris	amēminī	indicative
	amet	ament		ametur	amentur	
Impf.	amārem	amārēmus		amārer	amārēmur	
	amārēs	amārētis		amārēris	amārēminī	
	amāret	amārent		amāretur	amārentur	
Perf.	amāverim	amāverīmus		amāta sim	amātae sīmus	
	amāverīs	amāverītis		amāta sīs	amātae sītis	
	amāverit	amāverint		amāta sit	amātae sint	
Plpf.	amāvissem	amāvissēmus		amāta essem	amātae essēmus	
	amāvissēs	amāvissētis		amāta essēs	amātae essētis	
	amāvisset	amāvissent		amāta esset	amātae essent	

**Imperative**

amā                  amāte                  *love!*

**Participle**

Pres.	amāns ( <i>gen. amantis</i> )	<i>loving</i>			
Perf.				amātus, -a, -um	<i>having been loved</i>
Fut.	amātūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to love</i>		amandus, -a, -um	<i>going to be loved</i>

**Infinitive**

Pres.	amāre	<i>to love</i>	amārī	<i>to be love</i>
Perf.	amāvisse	<i>to have loved</i>	amātum esse	<i>to have been loved</i>
Fut.	amātūrum esse	<i>to be going to loved</i>		

**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum: to hold**

	active		translation	passive		translation
<b>Indicative</b>						
Pres.	teneō	tenēmus	<i>I hold</i>	teneor	tenēmur	<i>I am (being) held</i>
	tenēs	tenētis		tenēris	tenēminī	
	tenet	tenent		tenētur	tenentur	
Impf.	tenēbam	tenēbāmus	<i>I was holding</i>	tenēbar	tenēbāmur	<i>I was (being) held</i>
	tenēbās	tenēbātis		tenēbāris	tenēbāminī	
	tenēbat	tenēbant		tenēbātur	tenēbantur	
Fut.	tenēbō	tenēbimus	<i>I will hold</i>	tenēbor	tenēbimur	<i>I will be held</i>
	tenēbis	tenēbitis		tenēberis	tenēbiminī	
	tenēbit	tenēbunt		tenēbitur	tenēbuntur	
Perf.	tenuī	tenuimus	<i>I have held</i>	tenta sum	tentae sumus	<i>I have been held</i>
	tenuistī	tenuistis		tenta es	tentae estis	<i>was held</i>
	tenuit	tenuērunt		tenta est	tentae sunt	
Plpf.	tenueram	tenuerāmus	<i>I had held</i>	tenta eram	tentae erāmus	<i>I had been held</i>
	tenuerās	tenuerātis		tenta erās	tentae erātis	
	tenuerat	tenuerant		tenta erat	tentae erant	
Fut. Pf.	tenuerō	tenuerimus	<i>I will have held</i>	tenta erō	tentae erimus	<i>I will have been held</i>
	tenueris	tenueritis		tenta eris	tentae eritis	
	tenuerit	tenuerint		tenta erit	tentae erunt	

**Subjunctive**

Pres.	teneam	teneāmus	same as	tenear	teneāmur	same as indicative
	teneās	teneātis		teneāris	teneāminī	
	teneat	teneant		teneatur	teneantur	
Impf.	tenērem	tenērēmus		tenērer	tenērēmur	
	tenērēs	tenērētis		tenērēris	tenērēminī	
	tenēret	tenērent		tenērētur	tenērentur	
Perf.	tenuerim	tenuerīmus		tenta sim	tentae sīmus	
	tenuerīs	tenuerītis		tenta sīs	tentae sītis	
	tenuerit	tenuerint		tenta sit	tentae sint	
Plpf.	tenuissem	tenuissēmus		tenta essem	tentae essēmus	
	tenuissēs	tenuissētis		tenta essēs	tentae essētis	
	tenuisset	tenuissent		tenta esset	tentae essent	

**Imperative**

tenē            tenēte            *hold!*

**Participle**

Pres.	tenēns ( <i>gen. tenentis</i> )	<i>holding</i>			
Perf.			tentus, -a, -um		<i>having been held</i>
Fut.	tentūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to hold</i>	tenendus, -a, -um		<i>going to be held</i>

**Infinitive**

Pres.	tenēre	<i>to hold</i>	tenērī	<i>to be held</i>
Perf.	tenuisse	<i>to have held</i>	tentum esse	<i>to have been held</i>
Fut.	tentūrum esse	<i>to be going to hold</i>		

**dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum: to lead**

	active		translation	passive		translation
<b>Indicative</b>						
Pres.	dūcō	dūcimus	<i>I lead</i>	dūcor	dūcimur	<i>I am (being) led</i>
	dūcis	dūcitis		dūceris	dūciminī	
	dūcit	dūcunt		dūcitur	dūcuntur	
Impf.	dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus	<i>I was leading</i>	dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur	<i>I was (being) led</i>
	dūcēbās	dūcēbātis		dūcēbāris	dūcēbāminī	
	dūcēbat	dūcēbant		dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur	
Fut.	dūcam	dūcēmus	<i>I will lead</i>	dūcar	dūcēmur	<i>I will be led</i>
	dūcēs	dūcētis		dūcēris	dūcēminī	
	dūcet	dūcent		dūcētur	dūcentur	
Perf.	dūxī	dūximus	<i>I have led</i>	ducta sum	ductae sumus	<i>I have been led</i>
	dūxistī	dūxistis		ducta es	ductae estis	
	dūxit	dūxerunt		ducta est	ductae sunt	
Plpf.	dūxeram	dūxerāmus	<i>I had led</i>	ducta eram	ductae erāmus	<i>I had been led</i>
	dūxerās	dūxerātis		ducta erās	ductae erātis	
	dūxerat	dūxerant		ducta erat	ductae erant	
Fut. Pf.	dūxerō	dūxerimus	<i>I will have led</i>	ducta erō	ductae erimus	<i>I will have been led</i>
	dūxeris	dūxeritis		ducta eris	ductae eritis	
	dūxerit	dūxerint		ducta erit	ductae erunt	

**Subjunctive**

Pres.	dūcam	dūcāmus	same as	dūcar	dūcāmur	same as indicative
	dūcās	dūcātis	indicative	dūcāris	dūcāminī	
	dūcat	dūcant		dūcātur	dūcantur	
Impf.	dūcerem	dūcerēmus		dūcerer	dūcerēmur	
	dūcerēs	dūcerētis		dūcerēris	dūcerēminī	
	dūceret	dūcerent		dūcerētur	dūcerentur	
Perf.	dūxerim	dūxerīmus		ducta sim	ductae sīmus	
	dūxerīs	dūxerītis		ducta sīs	ductae sītis	
	dūxerit	dūxerint		ducta sit	ductae sint	
Plpf.	dūxissem	dūxissēmus		ducta essem	ductae essēmus	
	dūxissēs	dūxissētis		ducta essēs	ductae essētis	
	dūxisset	dūxissent		ducta esset	ductae essent	

**Imperative**

dūc(e)      dūcite      *lead!*

**Participle**

Pres.	dūcēns ( <i>gen. dūcentis</i> )	<i>leading</i>			
Perf.				ductus, -a, -um	<i>having been led</i>
Fut.	ductūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to lead</i>		dūcendus, -a, -um	<i>going to be led</i>

**Infinitive**

Pres.	dūcere	<i>to lead</i>	dūcī	<i>to be led</i>
Perf.	dūxisse	<i>to have led</i>	ductum esse	<i>to have been led</i>
Fut.	ductūrum esse	<i>to be going to lead</i>		

**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum: to take, seize**

	active		translation	passive		translation
<b>Indicative</b>						
Pres.	capiō	capimus	<i>I take</i>	capior	capimur	<i>I am (being) taken</i>
	capis	capitis		caperis	capiminī	
	capit	capiunt		capitur	capiuntur	
Impf.	capiēbam	capēbāmus	<i>I was taking</i>	capiēbar	capīēbāmur	<i>I was (being) taken</i>
	capiēbās	capīēbātis		capiēbāris	capīēbāminī	
	capiēbat	capīēbant		capiēbātur	capīēbantur	
Fut.	capiam	capiemus	<i>I will take</i>	capiar	capiemur	<i>I will be taken</i>
	capies	capietis		capieris	capieminī	
	capiet	capient		capientur	capientur	
Perf.	cēpī	cēpimus	<i>I have taken</i>	capta sum	captae sumus	<i>I have been taken</i>
	cēpistī	cēpistis		capta es	captae estis	<i>was taken</i>
	cēpit	cēperunt		capta est	captae sunt	
Plpf.	cēperam	cēperāmus	<i>I had taken</i>	capta eram	captae erāmus	<i>I had been taken</i>
	cēperās	cēperātis		capta erās	captae erātis	
	cēperat	cēperant		capta erat	captae erant	
Fut. Pf.	cēperō	cēperimus	<i>I will have taken</i>	capta erō	captae erimus	<i>I will have been</i>
	cēperis	cēperitis		capta eris	captae eritis	<i>taken</i>
	cēperit	cēperint		capta erit	captae erunt	

**Subjunctive**

Pres.	capiam	capāmus	same as	capiar	capiamur	same as indicative
	capias	capiatīs		capiaris	capiaminī	
	capiat	capiant		capiantur	capiantur	
Impf.	caperem	caperēmus		caperer	caperēmur	
	caperēs	caperētis		capereris	caperēminī	
	caperet	caperent		caperētur	caperentur	
Perf.	cēperim	cēperīmus		capta sim	captae sīmus	
	cēperīs	cēperītis		capta sīs	captae sītis	
	cēperit	cēperint		capta sit	captae sint	
Plpf.	cēpisse	cēpissēmus		capta essem	captae essēmus	
	cēpissēs	cēpissētis		capta essēs	captae essētis	
	cēpisset	cēpissent		capta esset	captae essent	

**Imperative**

cape          capite          *take!*

**Participle**

Pres.	capiens ( <i>gen. capientis</i> )	<i>taking</i>			
Perf.				captus, -a, -um	<i>having been taken</i>
Fut.	captūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to take</i>		capientus, -a, -um	<i>going to be taken</i>

**Infinitive**

Pres.	capere	<i>to take</i>	capī	<i>to be taken</i>
Perf.	cēpisse	<i>to have taken</i>	captum esse	<i>to have been taken</i>
Fut.	captūrum esse	<i>to be going to take</i>		

**sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum: to know**

	active		translation	passive		translation
<b>Indicative</b>						
Pres.	sciō	scīmus	<i>I know</i>	scior	scīmur	<i>I am (being) known</i>
	scīs	scītis		scīris	scīminī	
	scit	sciunt		scītur	sciuntur	
Impf.	sciēbam	sciēbāmus	<i>I was knowing</i>	sciēbar	sciēbāmur	<i>I was (being) known</i>
	sciēbās	sciēbātis		sciēbāris	sciēbāminī	
	sciēbat	sciēbant		sciēbātur	sciēbantur	
Fut.	sciam	sciēmus	<i>I will know</i>	sciar	sciēmur	<i>I will be known</i>
	sciēs	sciētis		sciēris	sciēminī	
	sciet	scient		sciētur	scientur	
Perf.	scīvī	scīvīmus	<i>I have known</i>	scīta sum	scītae sumus	<i>I have been known</i>
	scīvistī	scīvistis		scīta es	scītae estis	
	scīvīt	scīvērunt		scīta est	scītae sunt	
Plpf.	scīveram	scīverāmus	<i>I had known</i>	scīta eram	scītae erāmus	<i>I had been known</i>
	scīverās	scīverātis		scīta erās	scītae erātis	
	scīverat	scīverant		scīta erat	scītae erant	
Fut. Pf.	scīverō	scīverimus	<i>I will have known</i>	scīta erō	scītae erimus	<i>I will have been known</i>
	scīveris	scīveritis		scīta eris	scītae eritis	
	scīverit	scīverint		scīta erit	scītae erunt	

**Subjunctive**

Pres.	sciam	sciāmus	same as	sciar	sciāmur	same as indicative
	sciās	sciātis	indicative	sciāris	sciāminī	
	sciat	sciant		sciātur	sciantur	
Impf.	scīrem	scīrēmus		scīrer	scīrēmur	
	scīrēs	scīrētis		scīrēris	scīrēminī	
	scīret	scīrent		scīrētur	scīrentur	
Perf.	scīverim	scīverīmus		scīta sim	scītae sīmus	
	scīverīs	scīverītis		scīta sīs	scītae sītis	
	scīverit	scīverint		scīta sit	scītae sint	
Plpf.	scīvissem	scīvissēmus		scīta essem	scītae essēmus	
	scīvissēs	scīvissētis		scīta essēs	scītae essētis	
	scīvisset	scīvissent		scīta esset	scītae essent	

**Imperative**

scī                      scīte                      *know!*

**Participle**

Pres.	sciēns (gen. scientis)	<i>knowing</i>			
Perf.				scītus, -a, -um	<i>having been known</i>
Fut.	scītūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to know</i>		sciendus, -a, -um	<i>going to be known</i>

**Infinitive**

Pres.	scīre	<i>to know</i>	scīrī	<i>to be known</i>
Perf.	scīvisse	<i>to have known</i>	scītum esse	<i>to have been known</i>
Fut.	scītūrum esse	<i>to be going to know</i>		

<b>Sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: to be</b>			<b>possum, posse, potuī, -- : to be able, can</b>			
		translation			translation	
<b>Indicative</b>						
Pres.	sum es est	sumus estis sunt	<i>I am</i>	possum potes potest	possumus potestis possunt	<i>I am able, can</i>
Impf.	eram erās erat	erāmus erātis erant	<i>I was</i>	poteram poterās poterat	poterāmus poterātis poterant	<i>I was able, could</i>
Fut.	erō eris erit	erimus eritis erunt	<i>I will be</i>	poterō poteris poterit	poterimus poteritis poterunt	<i>I will be able</i>
Perf.	fuī fuistī fuit	fuimus fuistis fuerunt	<i>I have been, I was</i>	potuī potuistī potuit	potuimus potuistis potuerunt	<i>I have been able, I was able, could</i>
Plpf.	fueram fuerās fuerat	fuerāmus fuerātis fuerant	<i>I had been</i>	potueram potuerās potuerat	potuerāmus potuerātis potuerant	<i>I had been able</i>
Fut. Pf.	fuerō fueris fuerit	fuerimus fueritis fuerint	<i>I will have been</i>	potuerō potueris potuerit	potuerimus potueritis potuerint	<i>I will have been able</i>
<b>Subjunctive</b>						
Pres.	sim sīs sit	sīmus sītis sint	same as indicative	possim possīs possit	possīmus possītis possint	same as indicative
Impf.	essem essēs esset	essēmus essētis essent		possem possēs posset	possēmus possētis possent	
Perf.	fuerim fuerīs fuerit	fuerīmus fuerītis fuerint		potuerim potuerīs potuerit	potuerīmus potuerītis potuerint	
Plpf.	fuissem fuissēs fuisset	fuissēmus fuissētis fuissent		potuissem potuissēs potuisset	potuissēmus potuissētis potuissent	
<b>Imperative</b>						
	xxx			xxx		
<b>Infinitive</b>						
Pres.	esse		<i>to be</i>	posse	<i>to be able</i>	
Perf.	fuisse		<i>to have been</i>	potuisse	<i>to have been heard</i>	
Fut.	futūrum esse*		<i>to be going to be</i>	----		

\* alternative = fore

**sum, esse, fuī, futūrum:** to be, 165**adsum, -esse, -fuī:** be present, assist, 3**dēsum, -esse, -fuī:** be lacking, lack, fail, 6**intersum, -esse, -fuī:** take part in, engage in, 1**possum, posse, potuī:** be able, can, avail, 40**praesum, -esse, -fuī:** be over, preside over, 2**subsum, -esse, -fuī:** be near, close at hand, 1

**eō, īre, i(v)ī, itūrum: to go**

	active		translation
<b>Indicative</b>			
Pres.	eō īs it	īmus ītis eunt	<i>I go</i>
Impf.	ībam ībās ībat	ībāmus ībātis ībant	<i>I was going</i>
Fut.	ībō ībīs ībīt	ībimus ībītis ībunt	<i>I will go</i>
Perf.	īī īstī īit	īimus īstis īērunt	<i>I went, have gone</i>
Plpf.	ieram ierās ierat	ierāmus ierātis ierant	<i>I had gone</i>
Fut. Pf.	ierō ierīs ierit	ierimus ierītis ierint	<i>I will have gone</i>

**Subjunctive**

Pres.	eam eās eat	eāmus eātis eant	same as indicative
Impf.	īrem īrēs īret	īrēmus īrētis īrent	
Perf.	ierim ierīs ierit	ierimus ierītis ierunt	
Plpf.	īsem īssēs īsset	īssēmus īssētis īssent	

**Imperative**

ī      īte

**Participle**

Pres.	īēns (euntis)	<i>going</i>
Perf.	---	
Fut.	itūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to go</i>

**Infinitive**

Pres.	īre	<i>to go</i>
Perf.	īsse	<i>to have gone</i>
Fut.	ītūrum esse	<i>to be going to go</i>

**Compound verbs**

adeō, -īre, i(v)ī, itus: approach, encounter, 2  
eō, īre, īvī, itum: to go, come, 4  
exeō, -īre, -īī (īvī), -itus: go out, 4  
ineō, -īre, īī, -itum: go into, enter, 1  
intereō, -īre, -īvī, -itum: to die, perish, 3  
introeō, -īre, īī, -itum: go into, enter, 1  
obeō, -īre, -īvī, -itum: go to meet, oppose 1  
prōdeō, -īre, -īvī, -itum: advance, go forth, 1  
redeō, -īre, -īvī: go back, return, 1  
subeō, -īre, -īī, -itum: approach, undergo, 1  
trānseō, -īre, -īī (īvī), itus: pass (by), 6

**volō, velle, voluī: to wish, want**

	active		translation	
<b>Indicative</b>				
Pres.	<u>volō</u> <u>vīs</u> <u>vult</u>	<u>volumus</u> <u>vultis</u> <sup>1</sup> <u>volunt</u> <sup>2</sup>	<i>I wish</i>	← irregular present tense <sup>1</sup> p. 14, 46 <sup>2</sup> p. 28
Impf.	volēbam volēbās volēbat	volēbāmus volēbātis volēbant	<i>I was wishing</i>	
Fut.	volam volēs volet	volēmus volētis volent	<i>I will wish</i>	
Perf.	voluī voluistī voluit	voluimus voluistis voluērunt	<i>I have wished</i>	
Plpf.	volueram voluerās voluerat	voluerāmus voluerātis voluerant	<i>I had wished</i>	
Fut. Pf.	voluerō volueris voluerit	voluerimus volueritis voluerint	<i>I will have wished</i>	
<b>Subjunctive</b>				
Pres.	<u>velim</u> <u>velis</u> <u>velit</u> <sup>3</sup>	<u>velimus</u> <u>velitis</u> <u>velint</u> <sup>4</sup>	same as indicative	← irregular present tense (not volam) <sup>3</sup> p. 52 <sup>4</sup> p. 28, 42, 58, 60
Impf.	<u>vellem</u> <u>vellēs</u> <u>vellet</u>	<u>vellēmus</u> <u>vellētis</u> <u>vellent</u> <sup>5</sup>		← irregular imperfect tense (irreg. velle) <sup>5</sup> p. 10, 40, 52, 58, 62
Perf.	voluerim voluerīs voluerit	voluerīmus voluerītis voluerint		
Plpf.	voluissem voluissēs voluisset	voluissēmus voluissētis voluissent		
<b>Imperative</b>				
	xxxx	xxxx	<i>wish!</i>	
<b>Participle</b>				
Pres.	volēns (gen. volentis)		<i>wishing</i>	
Perf.	xxxx			
Fut.	xxxx			
<b>Infinitive</b>				
Pres.	<u>velle</u>		<i>to wish</i>	← irregular infinitive
Perf.	voluisse		<i>to have wished</i>	
Fut.	xxxx			

**sequō, sequī, secūtus-a-um sum: to follow**

	deponent		translation
<b>Indicative</b>			
Pres.	sequor sequeris sequitur	sequimur sequiminī sequuntur	<i>I follow</i>
Impf.	sequēbar sequēbāris sequēbātur	sequēbāmur sequēbāminī sequēbantur	<i>I was following</i>
Fut.	sequar sequēris sequētur	sequēmur sequēminī sequentur	<i>I will follow</i>
Perf.	secūta sum secūta es secūta est	secūtae sumus secūtae estis secūtae sunt	<i>I have followed</i>
Plpf.	secūta eram secūta erās secūta erat	secūtae erāmus secūtae erātis secūtae erant	<i>I had followed</i>
Fut. Pf.	secūta erō secūta eris secūta erit	secūtae erimus secūtae eritis secūtae erunt	<i>I will have followed</i>
<b>Subjunctive</b>			
Pres.	sequar sequāris sequātur	sequāmur sequāminī sequantur	same as indicative
Impf.	sequerer sequerēris sequerētur	sequerēmur sequerēminī sequerentur	
Perf.	secūta sim secūta sīs secūta sit	secūtae sīmus secūtae sītis secūtae sint	
Plpf.	secūta essem secūta essēs secūta esset	secūtae essēmus secūtae essētis secūtae essent	
<b>Imperative</b>			
	sequere	sequitor	<i>follow!</i>
<b>Participle</b>			
Pres.	sequēns (gen. sequentis)		<i>following</i>
Perf.	secūtus, -a, -um		<i>having followed</i>
Fut.	secūtūrus, -a, -um		<i>going to follow</i> sequendus,-a -um <i>going to be followed</i>
<b>Infinitive</b>			
Pres.	sequī		<i>to follow</i>
Perf.	secūtum esse		<i>to have followed</i>
Fut.	secūtūrum esse		<i>to be going to follow</i>

**I. Terminology:**

If-then clauses are called **conditionals** or **conditional sentences**. All conditionals have two parts

which we will call by the Greek terms in the grammar notes to avoid confusion: (1) the **protasis** (“premise,” if-clause, conditional clause) and (2) the **apodosis** (“result,” then-clause, consequent).

In order to identify a type of condition (note the names in boldface below), we must identify the tense and mood of the verbs in the protasis and apodosis. If we encounter verbs and moods that do not fit the modeled conditional sentences below, we call such sentences **mixed conditions**.

**II. Rules in Indirect Discourse**

- (1) Translate subjunctives in the tense in which you find them.
  - a. Very often readers modify the translate naturally to fit the context.
  - b. Identification of the type of condition occurs after, not before or during, translation.
- (2) Verbs in the apodosis (if-clause)—just as all subordinate verbs—become subjunctive.
  - a. In primary sequence, subjunctive verbs in direct discourse remain the same in indirect.
  - b. In secondary sequence, almost all verbs become imperfect subjunctive, which makes it rather difficult for readers to determine the tenses and types of conditions.
  - c. the protasis of contrafactuals do not change in primary or secondary sequence.

**III. Types of Conditional Sentences (see also pp. 59 and 61)****Indicative Conditions**

**Simple Present:** If you believe, you are wrong.

dīcō “sī credis, errās.”

dīcō sī haec credās, tē errāre

dixī “sī credis, errās.”

dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errāre

**Future More Vivid:** If you (will have) believe(d), you will be wrong.

dīcō “sī credēs, errābis.”

dīcō sī haec credās, tē errātūrum esse

dixī “sī credēs, errābis.”

dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse

**Simple Past:** If you believed, you were wrong.

dīcō “sī credēbās/credidistī, errāvistī.”

dīcō sī haec crederēs/credideris, tē errāvisse.

dixī “sī credēbās/credidistī, errāvistī.”

dixī sī haec crederēs/credidissēs, tē errāvisse.

**Subjunctive Conditions**

**Fut. Less Vivid:** If you should believe, you would be wrong.

dīcō “sī credās, errēs.”

dīcō sī haec credās, tē errātūrum esse

dixī “sī credās, errēs.”

dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse

**Present Contrafactual:** If you were believing, you would be wrong.

dīcō “sī crederēs, errārēs.”

dīcō sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse

dixī “sī crederēs, errārēs.”

dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse

**Past Contrafactual:** If you had believed, you would have been wrong.

dīcō “sī credissēs, errāvissēs.”

dīcō sī haec credissēs, tē errātūrum fuisse.

dixī “sī credissēs, errāvissēs.”

dixī sī haec credissēs, tē errātūrum fuisse.

## Caesar Alphabetized Core Vocabulary (5 or more times)

The following seven pages includes all words in the Caesar selections that occur five or more times arranged in an alphabetized vocabulary list. The author tabulated the frequency lists by collating all of Caesars' words in the selections and counting them. Digital flashcards are available online.

- ā, ab:** (away) from, by, 80  
**absum, -esse, āfuī:** be absent, lack, 6  
**ac:** and, and also, and even, 24  
**accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus:** approach, 5  
**accidō, -ere, accidī:** to happen, fall to, 13  
**accipiō:** to take without effort, receive, get, accept, 10  
**ad:** to, toward; near, at 110  
**Aduātucī, -ōrum m.:** Aduatuci (in Belgae), 5  
**adventus, -ūs m.:** arrival, approach, 7  
**ager, agrī m.:** field, land; farm, 8  
**aliquī, -qua, -quod:** some, any, definite, 8  
**alius, -a, -ud:** other, another, else, 13  
**alter, -era, -erum:** other (of two), 12  
**altus, -a, -um:** high, lofty, tall, 5  
**Ambiorix, -rigis m.:** Ambiorix, 15  
**amīcitiā, -ae, f.:** friendship, 12  
**animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum:** turn mind to, notice 5  
**animus, -ī m.:** mind, spirit; pl. courage, 6  
**annus, -ī m.:** year, 11  
**appellō (1):** call, call by name, 5  
**apud:** among, at the house of (acc.), 7  
**arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum:** to judge, think, 10  
**arma, -ōrum n.:** arms, equipment, tools, 7  
**ascendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus:** ascend, mount 2  
**at:** but; mind you; but, you say, 7  
**atque:** and, and also, and even, 60  
**aut:** or (aut...aut – either...or), 32  
**autem:** however, moreover, 5  
**barbarus, -a, -um:** foreign, savage, 5  
**Belgae, -ārum m.:** Belgians, 6  
**bellum, -ī, n.:** war, 16  
**Britannia, -ae f.:** Britain, 6  
**Caesar, -aris m.:** Caesar, 40  
**calamitās, -tātis f.:** loss, misfortune, calamity, disaster, 5  
**capīō, -ere, cēpī, captum:** to take, capture, seize, 11  
**castra, -ōrum n.:** camp, encampment, 23  
**casus, -ūs m.:** misfortune, mishap; fall 5  
**causa, -ae f.:** reason, cause; case, 21  
**celeritās, -tātis f.:** quickness, swiftness, speed, 5  
**celeriter:** quickly, swiftly, speedily, 6  
**certus, -a, -um:** definite, sure, certain, reliable, 8  
**Cicero, Cicerōnis m.:** Cicero 14

**circiter:** (round) about, not far from, 7  
**circumveniō, -īre:** to come around, encircle, 6  
**cīvitās cīvitātis, f.:** state, citizenship, 20  
**coepī, coepisse, coeptum:** to begin, 9  
**cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum:** to learn, come to know, pf. know, 14  
**cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum:** to collect; compel, 11  
**cohors, cohortis f.:** cohort, company, troop 14  
**commūnis, -e:** common, 6  
**compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum:** fill up, fill, 6  
**complūres n.:** several, 5  
**concilium, -iī n.:** meeting, rendezvous, 6  
**confirmō (1):** make strong, confirm strengthen, 5  
**co(n)iciō, -ere, -iēcī:** throw together, throw, take oneself, 10  
**cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum:** to try, 6  
**cōnsilium, -iī n.:** plan, counsel, 12  
**conspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus:** see, behold, 5  
**constituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus:** decide, establish, resolve, 14  
**consuescō, -ere, -ēvī, -suētum:** to accustom, 8  
**consuētūdo, -inis f.:** custom, habit, 5  
**contineō, -ēre, -nuī, -tentum:** hold or keep together, 9  
**contrōversia, -ae f.:** dispute, debate, 7  
**conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus:** come together, assemble, 9  
**copia, -ae f.:** abundance, supply; troops, 12  
**Cotta, -ae m.:** Cotta, 10  
**Crassus, -ī m.:** Crassus, 5  
**cum:** with (+ abl.); when, since, although, 86  
**dē:** (down) from; about, concerning, 41  
**dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum:** report, offer 8  
**dēmonstrō (1):** to show, demonstrate, 5  
**dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrum:** be lacking, lack, fail, 6  
**dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus:** say, speak, tell, call, name, 18  
**diēs, -ēī m./f.:** day, time, season, 33  
**discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum:** to go away, depart, 9  
**disciplīna, -ae f.:** training, instruction, 5  
**dō, dare, dedī, datum:** give; grant, 18  
**Druidēs, -um m.:** Druids, 6  
**dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus:** lead, draw, 7  
**dum:** while, as long as, until, 6  
**duo, duae, duo:** two, 8  
**ē, ex:** out from, from, out of (+ abl.), 72  
**Eburōnēs, -um m.:** Eburones (German), 5  
**efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus:** make, form, 5  
**ēgredior, -ī, -gressus:** go out, disembark, 5  
**eques, equitis m.:** horseman, rider, 12  
**equitātus, -ūs m.:** cavalry, 5  
**et:** and, also, even, 167  
**etiam:** also, even, besides, 8

**etsī:** even if, although, though, 5  
**exercitus, -ūs m.:** (trained) army, 9  
**existimō (1):** judge, consider, think, 9  
**facilis, -e:** easy; adv. facile, easily, 10  
**faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum:** do, make, perform; grant, 40  
**facultās, -tātis f.:** opportunity, power, skill, ability, 5  
**ferē:** almost, nearly, closely, 7  
**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus:** carry, bear, endure, 7  
**filius, -iī m.:** son, 5  
**finis, -is m./f.:** end, border; territory, 17  
**finitimus, -a, -um:** neighboring; subst. neighbors, 6  
**flūmen, -inis n.:** river, stream, 9  
**fortis, -e:** strong, brave, valiant, 7  
**frūmentum, -ī n.:** grain, 10  
**Gallia, -ae f.:** Gaul, 17  
**Gallus, -a, -um:** Gallic; subst. a Gaul, 15  
**genus, generis, n.:** origin, kind, sort, 10  
**Germānus, -a, -um:** German, 9  
**gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus:** carry (on), wage, 8  
**gravis, -e:** heavy, serious, severe; venerable, 9  
**habeō, -ēre, habuī, -itus:** have, hold; consider, 32  
**Helvētius, -a, -um:** Helvetian; subst. a Helvetian 16  
**hīberna, -ōrum n.:** winter-quarters, 26  
**hic, haec, hoc:** this, these, 92  
**homō, -inis m./f.:** man, mortal, human, 15  
**hostis, -is m./f.:** stranger, enemy, foe, 43  
**ibi:** there, in that place, 5  
**īdem, eadem, idem:** the same, 14  
**ille, illa, illud:** that, those, 22  
**impedīmentum, -ī n.:** baggage, impediment, 6  
**imperium, -ī n.:** command, power, 7  
**imperō (1):** command, order, bid, 7  
**impetus, -ūs m.:** attack, assault, onset, 7  
**in:** in, on (abl.), into, to (acc.) 173  
**incitō (1):** put into motion, urge on, 5  
**inferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātum:** wage, carry on, 7  
**initium, -ī n.:** beginning, entrance, 6  
**inter:** between, among (+ acc.), 15  
**interim:** meanwhile, in the meantime, 5  
**interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** kill, slay, destroy, 14  
**intermittō, -ere:** interrupt, discontinue, leave off, 5  
**ipse, ipsa, ipsum:** -self; the very, 17  
**is, ea, id:** this, that; he, she, it, 133  
**ita:** so, thus, 7  
**itaque:** and so, 6  
**iter, itineris n.:** way, road, route, journey, 17  
**iubeō, iubere, iussī, iussum:** to order, command, 17

**Labiēnus, ī m.:** Labienus, 5  
**lēgātus, -ī m.:** an envoy, legate, 16  
**legio, -ōnis f.:** legion, (~4200 soldiers), 32  
**licet:** impersonal, it is allowed or permitted, 5  
**littera, -ae f.:** letter of the alphabet, letter, literature, 12  
**locus, -ī m.:** place, region, location, 31  
**longē:** far, at a distant, 6  
**longus -a, -um:** long, 8  
**Lucius, -ī m.:** Lucius, 10  
**magnitūdo, -inis f.:** greatness, size, 5  
**magnus, -a, -um:** great, large; mighty, important, 29  
**maior, maius:** greater, 6  
**manus, manūs, f.:** hand; group, 9  
**maximē:** exceedingly especially, 6  
**maximus, -a, -um:** greatest, largest, 15  
**mīles, mīlitis, m.:** soldier, 33  
**mīlle pl. mīlia, ium n.:** thousand, 9  
**minor, minus:** less, smaller, 7  
**mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus:** send, hurl, dismiss, 20  
**mors, mortis, f.:** death, 9  
**multitūdo, inis f.:** multitude, population, people, 11  
**multus, -a, -um:** much, many, 11  
**mūnītio, -iōnis f.:** fortification, paving, 7  
**nam:** for, 9  
**nāvis, nāvis, f.:** ship, boat, 23  
**nē:** lest, that not, no, not, 13  
**neque:** and not, nor (neque...neque = neither...nor), 27  
**Nerviī, -iōrum m.:** Nervii (Belgic Gauls) 9  
**nihil:** nothing, 10  
**nisi:** if not, unless 6  
**nōn:** not, by no means, not at all, 36  
**noster, nostra, nostrum:** our, 36  
**nox, noctis, f.:** night, 9  
**nūllus, -a, -um:** none, no, no one, 9  
**numerus, -ī m.:** number, multitude, 13  
**nuntius, -iī m.:** messenger, 6  
**ob:** on account of, because of (acc.), 5  
**obsēs, obsidis m./f.:** hostage, 5  
**obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum:** hold, maintain, 6  
**omnis, omne:** every, all, 72  
**oppugnātio, -tiōnis f.:** an assault, 6  
**oppugnō (1):** capture by assault, attack, 6  
**ōrātiō, -ionis f.:** speaking, speech, language, 8  
**ordō, -inis m.:** order, line, array; status, 6  
**Orgetorix, -is m.:** Orgetorix, 6  
**pars, partis, f.:** part, side, direction, 43

**passus, -ūs:** pace, step, 7  
**paulus, -a, -um:** little, small, 9  
**pāx, pācis f.:** peace, quiet, rest, 6  
**per:** through, across (acc) 18  
**perīculum, -ī n.:** risk, danger, peril, 14  
**permovēō, -ēre:** to move deeply, trouble, excite, agitate, 5  
**persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum:** persuade, convince, 12  
**pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī:** to pertain to, reach, stretch to, 7  
**perturbō (1):** confuse, disturb, throw into confusion, 6  
**pervenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum:** arrive, 8  
**pēs, pedis m.:** foot, 5  
**petō, petere, petīvī, petītum:** seek, aim at, 7  
**plērumque:** for the most part, mostly, commonly, 5  
**ponō, ponere, posuī, positum:** to put, place, 6  
**populus, -ī m.:** people, nation, 9  
**possum, posse, potuī:** be able, can, avail, 40  
**post:** after, behind (+ acc.); afterward, next, 5  
**praemium, -ī n.:** reward, prize, 5  
**praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus:** perform, show, be better, 6  
**premō, -ere, pressī, pressus:** check, pursue, control, 7  
**prīmus -a -um:** first, 15  
**prīvō (1):** deprive of, rob, strip from (abl), 5  
**prō:** before, for, in behalf of (abl.), 16  
**probō (1):** approve, commend, 5  
**proelium, -iī n.:** battle, combat, 15  
**profectio, -ōnis f.:** departure, 5  
**proficīscor, -ī, -fectus:** set out, depart, 23  
**prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus:** keep off, prohibit, 6  
**propter:** on account of, because of, 5  
**prōvincia, -ae f.:** province, 7  
**proximus, -a, -um:** nearest, very close, 12  
**pūblicus, -a, -um:** public, common, 11  
**pugna, -ae f.:** battle, fight, 7  
**pugnō (1):** to fight, 9  
**Pullo, Pullōnis, m.:** Pullo, 6  
**quantus, -a, -um:** how great, much, many, 6  
**-que:** and, 109  
**quī, quae, quod (quis? quid?):** who, which, that, 226  
**quidem:** indeed, in fact, certainly, 6  
**Quintus, -ī m.:** Quintus, 6  
**quisque, quidque:** each one, each person, 9  
**ratio, ratiōnis, f.:** calculation, account, method, 5  
**recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** take back, recover, 10  
**regnum, -ī n.:** royal power, kingdom, realm, 8  
**relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum:** to leave behind, 7  
**reliquus, -a, um:** remaining, the rest of, 28

**rēs, reī, f.:** thing, matter, affair, business, 64  
**resistō, -ere, -stīti:** stand still, halt; oppose, 5  
**Rhēnus, -ī m.:** Rhine River, 9  
**Rhodanus, -a, -um:** Rhone, 5  
**Rōmānus, -a, -um:** of Rome, Roman, 15  
**Sabīnus, ī m.:** Sabinus, 7  
**salūs, -ūtis f.:** safety, refuge; health, 10  
**sē:** himself, herself, itself, themselves, 74  
**sed:** but, moreover, however, 13  
**Sēquanus, -a, -um:** Sequanian, 5  
**sēsē:** emphatic form of reflexive sē, 14  
**sī:** if (only), whether, in case that, 30  
**signum -ī, n.:** sign, signal; gesture, seal, 5  
**sine:** without (abl.), 8  
**singulus, -a, -um:** one by one, separate, 5  
**spērō (1):** hope (for), expect, 6  
**spēs, -ēī f.:** hope, expectation, 6  
**sub:** under, below, beneath, underneath, 5  
**subitō:** suddenly, 5  
**subsequor, -ī, secūtus sum:** to follow after or behind, 7  
**subsidiū, ī n.:** reserve troops; third line of battle, 5  
**sum, esse, fuī, futūrum:** to be, 165  
**summus, -a, -um:** top of, highest (part of) 10  
**superō (1):** surpass, overcome, 6  
**superus, -a, -um:** upper, higher, above, 9  
**sustineō, -ēre, -uī:** hold up, sustain, 8  
**suus, -a, -um:** his, her, its, their own, 54  
**tamen:** however, nevertheless, 14  
**tantus, -a, -um:** so great, so large, 10  
**telum, -ī n.:** projective, weapon, blow, 9  
**tempus, temporis, n.:** time, occasion, 11  
**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum:** to hold, keep, 6  
**tertius, -a, -um:** third, 8  
**Titurius, -ī m.:** Titurius, 8  
**tōtus -a, -um:** whole, entire, 7  
**trānseō, -īre, -īī (īvī), itus:** pass (by), 6  
**trēs, tria:** three, 7  
**tum:** then, at that time, 12  
**turris, turris f.:** tower, walled tower, 7  
**tūtus, -a, -um:** safe, secure, guarded, 7  
**ūllus, -a, -um:** any, 5  
**undique:** (from) everywhere, from or on all sides, 5  
**ūnus, -a, -um:** one, 29  
**ūsus, -ūs m.:** use, practice, application, 10  
**ut:** as, just as, when (+ ind.); (so) that, in order that, 59  
**uterque, utraque, utrumque:** each (of two) 8  
**ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum:** use, employ (abl.), 5

**vallum, -ī n.:** wall, fortification, palisade, 11  
**veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus:** come, go, 14  
**victoria, -ae f.:** victory, 7  
**videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum:** to see, 14  
**virtūs, -ūtis f.:** valor, manhood, excellence, 11  
**vīta, -ae, f.:** life, 5  
**volō, velle, voluī:** will, wish, be willing, 13  
**Vorēnus, -ī m.:** Vorenius, 5



















